

FAX Option Type 3045

Operating Instructions Facsimile Reference Advanced Features>



1	Transmission Mode
2	Checking and Canceling Transmission Files

- **3** Communication Information
- 4 Other Transmission Features
- 5 Reception Features
- 6 Fax via Computer
- **7** Simplifying the Operation
- 8 Facsimile Features
- **9** Administrator Setting
- 10 Solving Operation Problems
- (11) Appendix

Read this manual carefully before you use this machine and keep it handy for future reference. For safe and correct use, be sure to read the Safety Information before using the machine.

Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

Notes

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

Important

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Trademarks

Microsoft[®], Windows[®] and Windows NT[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe[®] and Acrobat[®] are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

Note

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- The product name of Windows[®] 95 is Microsoft[®] Windows 95.
- The product name of Windows[®] 98 is Microsoft[®] Windows 98.
- The product name of Windows[®] Me is Microsoft[®] Windows Millennium Edition (Windows Me).
- The product names of Windows[®] 2000 are as follows: Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Advanced Server Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Server Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Professional
- The product names of Windows[®] XP are as follows: Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Professional Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Home Edition
- The product names of the Windows Server[™] 2003 are as follows: Microsoft[®] Windows Server[™] 2003 Standard Edition Microsoft[®] Windows Server[™] 2003 Enterprise Edition Microsoft[®] Windows Server[™] 2003 Web Edition
- The product names of Windows NT[®] 4.0 are as follows: Microsoft[®] Windows NT[®] Server 4.0 Microsoft[®] Windows NT[®] Workstation 4.0

Manuals for This Machine

The following manuals describe the operational procedures of this machine. For particular functions, see the relevant parts of the manual.

🖉 Note

- □ Manuals provided are specific to machine type.
- □ Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader is necessary to view the manuals as a PDF file.
- □ Two CD-ROMs are provided:
 - CD-ROM 1 "Operating Instructions"
 - CD-ROM 2 "Scanner Driver and Document Management Utility"

General Settings Guide (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Provides an overview of the machine and describes System Settings (such as Tray Paper Settings), Document Server functions, and troubleshooting. Refer to this manual for Address Book procedures such as registering fax numbers, e-mail addresses, and user codes.

Security Reference

This manual is for administrators of this machine. It describes security functions that the administrators can use to protect data from being tampered with, or prevent the machine from unauthorized use. Also refer to this manual for the procedures for registering administrators, as well as setting user and administrator authentication.

Network Guide (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Provides information about configuring and operating the printer in a network environment and using software.

This manual covers all models, and therefore contains functions and settings that may not be available for your model.

Images, illustrations, functions, and supported operating systems may differ from those of your model.

Copy Reference (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Describes operations, functions, and troubleshooting for the machine's copier function.

✤ Facsimile Reference < Basic Features> (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Describes operations, functions, and troubleshooting for the machine's facsimile function.

✤ Facsimile Reference <Advanced Features> (this manual) (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Describes advanced facsimile functions such as line settings and procedures for registering IDs.

Printer Reference (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Describes system settings, operations, functions, and trouble shooting for the machine's printer function.

Scanner Reference (PDF file - CD-ROM 1)

Describes operations, functions, and troubleshooting for the machine's scanner function.

Manuals for DeskTopBinder Lite

DeskTopBinder Lite is a utility included on the CD-ROM labeled "Scanner Driver and Document Management Utility".

- DeskTopBinder Lite Setup Guide (PDF file CD-ROM 2) Describes installation of, and the operating environment for DeskTop-Binder Lite in detail. This guide can be displayed from the **[Setup]** dialog box when DeskTopBinder Lite is installed.
- DeskTopBinder Introduction Guide (PDF file CD-ROM 2) Describes operations of DeskTopBinder Lite and provides an overview of its functions. This guide is added to the **[Start]** menu when DeskTopBinder Lite is installed.
- Auto Document Link Guide (PDF file CD-ROM 2) Describes operations and functions of Auto Document Link installed with DeskTopBinder Lite. This guide is added to the **[Start]** menu when Desk-TopBinder Lite is installed.

Other manuals

- PostScript 3 Supplement (PDF file CD-ROM 1)
- Unix Supplement (Available from an authorized dealer, or as a PDF file on our Web site.)

🖉 Note

□ The following software products are referred to using general names:

- DeskTopBinder Lite and DeskTopBinder Professional → DeskTopBinder
- ScanRouter V2 Lite and ScanRouter EX Professional (optional) → the Scan-Router delivery software
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and SmartDeviceMonitor for Client → SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin/Client

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Manuals for This Machine	i
How to Read This Manual	1
Symbols	1
Names of Major Functions	

1. Transmission Mode

Sending at a Specific Time (Send Later)	3
Sender Settings	5
Priority Transmission	8
Confidential Transmission	9
Polling Transmission	
Polling Transmission Clear Report	13
Polling Reception	14
Polling Reception Reserve Report	
Polling Reception Result Report	

2. Checking and Canceling Transmission Files

Displaying Confirmation of Transmission	18
Canceling a Transmission	
Deleting a Destination	20
Adding a Destination	21
Changing Other Options	22
Changing the Transmission Time	
Changing the SMTP Server Setting	23
Printing a File	24
Resending a File	25
Printing a List of Files in Memory (Print TX File List)	

3. Communication Information

Printing the Journal	.27
Journal	
Checking the Transmission Result (TX File Status)	.31
Checking the Reception Result (RX File Status)	.32
Displaying the Memory Status	.33
Printing/Deleting Received and Stored Documents (Print/Delete Stored RX File)	.34
Printing Received and Stored Documents	.34
Deleting Received and Stored Documents	.35
Printing a Confidential Document	.36
Confidential File Report	.37
Printing a File Received with Memory Lock	.38
Personal Boxes	.40
Personal Boxes	
Printing Personal Box Documents	.41

Information Boxes	
Information Boxes	
Storing Documents in Information Boxes	
Printing Information Box Documents	
Deleting Information Box Documents	

4. Other Transmission Features

Handy Dialing Functions	
Chain Dial	
(Example) 01133-1-555333	
Redial	
Advanced Features	
SUB Code	
SID Code	
SEP Code	
PWD Code	
Transfer Request	
With transfer requests set in the System Settings menu	
On Hook Dial	
Manual Dial	
Changing the Line Port	
Sub Transmission Mode	
Book Fax	
Two-Sided Transmission (Double-Sided Transmission)	
Standard Message Stamp	
Sending an Auto Document	
Printing documents stored as Auto Documents	
Sending a Stored File	
Sending stored documents	
Printing stored documents Stamp	
Transmission Options	
Fax Header Print	
Label Insertion	
Reduced Image Transmission	
Auto Reduce	
Default ID Transmission	
Selecting transmission options for a single transmission	
More Transmission Functions	78
If Memory Runs Out While Storing an Original	
Parallel Memory Transmission	
Automatic Redial	79
Batch Transmission	79
Dual Access	
Transmission with Image Rotation	
Simultaneous Broadcast	
JBIG Transmission	
Transmitting Journal by E-mail	
Journal by e-mail	
Printed Reports	
Memory Storage Report	
Communication Failure Report	82

5. Reception Features

Immediate Reception83Memory Reception84Substitute Reception85Receiving documents unconditionally85Receiving documents according to parameter-specified settings86Reception Functions87Transfer Station87Transfer Result Report88Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)89Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents90Routing Received Documents92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark97
Substitute Reception 85 Receiving documents unconditionally 85 Receiving documents according to parameter-specified settings 86 Reception Functions 87 Transfer Station 87 Transfer Result Report 88 Transfer Result Report 88 Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail) 89 Forwarding Received Documents 90 Routing Received Documents with SUB Code 91 Transferring Received Documents 92 SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax 93 Routing e-mail received via SMTP 94 JBIG Reception 96 Printing Options 97 Print Completion Beep 97 Checkered Mark 97
Receiving documents unconditionally85Receiving documents according to parameter-specified settings86Reception Functions87Transfer Station87Transfer Result Report88Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)89Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents with SUB Code91Transferring Received Documents92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark97
Receiving documents according to parameter-specified settings 86 Reception Functions 87 Transfer Station 87 Transfer Result Report 88 Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail) 89 Forwarding Received Documents 90 Routing Received Documents with SUB Code 91 Transferring Received Documents 92 SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax 93 Routing e-mail received via SMTP 94 JBIG Reception 96 Auto Fax Reception Power-Up 96 Printing Options 97 Print Completion Beep 97 Checkered Mark 97
Reception Functions87Transfer Station87Transfer Result Report88Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)89Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents with SUB Code91Transferring Received Documents92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark97
Transfer Station.87Transfer Result Report88Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)89Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents with SUB Code91Transferring Received Documents.92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax.93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up.96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark.97
Transfer Result Report88Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)89Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents with SUB Code91Transferring Received Documents92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark97
Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)89Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents with SUB Code91Transferring Received Documents92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark97
Forwarding Received Documents90Routing Received Documents with SUB Code91Transferring Received Documents92SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax93Routing e-mail received via SMTP94JBIG Reception96Auto Fax Reception Power-Up96Printing Options97Print Completion Beep97Checkered Mark97
Routing Received Documents with SUB Code 91 Transferring Received Documents 92 SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax 93 Routing e-mail received via SMTP 94 JBIG Reception 96 Auto Fax Reception Power-Up 96 Printing Options 97 Print Completion Beep 97 Checkered Mark 97
Transferring Received Documents. 92 SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax. 93 Routing e-mail received via SMTP 94 JBIG Reception 96 Auto Fax Reception Power-Up. 96 Printing Options 97 Print Completion Beep 97 Checkered Mark 97
SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax
Routing e-mail received via SMTP 94 JBIG Reception 96 Auto Fax Reception Power-Up 96 Printing Options 97 Print Completion Beep 97 Checkered Mark 97
JBIG Reception
Auto Fax Reception Power-Up
Printing Options
Print Completion Beep
Checkered Mark97
Centre Mark97
Reception Time
Two-Sided Printing
180-degree rotation printing
Multi-Copy Reception
Image Rotation100
Combine Two Originals100
Page Separation and Length Reduction101
Reverse Order Printing102
Page Reduction102
TSI Print (Transmitting Subscriber Identification Print)103
If There Is No Paper of the Correct Size103
Setting priority trays104
Just size printing104
Having incoming documents printed on paper from the bypass tray105
Where Incoming Documents Are Delivered - Output Tray
Specifying Tray for Lines
Tray Shift

6. Fax via Computer

Sending Fax Documents from Computers	
Before Use	
Installing the Software	
Auto run program	
Installing individual applications	
Applications Stored on the CD-ROM	
LAN-Fax Driver	
Address Book	
LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor	110

Setting LAN-Fax Driver Properties	110
Setting print properties	110
Making Settings for Option Configuration	111
Basic Transmission	112
Specifying options	115
Confirming transmission results by e-mail	117
LAN-Fax Result Report	118
Printing and Saving	118
Editing Address Book	118
Editing Fax Cover Sheets	120
Creating a cover sheet	120
Attaching a created cover sheet	121
LAN-Fax Operation Messages	122
Viewing Fax Information Using a Web Browser	123
Viewing, Printing, and Deleting Received Fax Documents Using a Web Image Monitor	
Viewing received fax documents using a Web browser	
Printing fax information using a Web browser	
Deleting fax information using a Web browser	
Programming Destination Information from Web Browser	
Delivering Files Received by Fax	

7. Simplifying the Operation

Programs	129
Registering and Changing Keystroke Programs	
Registering a priority function using a program	130
Changing a program name	131
Deleting a Program	131
Using a Program	132
Using the Document Server	
Storing a Document	134
Changing Stored Document Information	
Deleting a Stored Document	138
Managing Documents Saved in the Document Server from a Computer	139
Using DeskTopBinder	
Using a Web browser	140

8. Facsimile Features

Function List1	41
Accessing User Tools (Facsimile Features)1	44
Quitting Default Settings1	44
General Settings/Adjustment1	145
Reception Settings	147
E-mail Settings	48
IP-Fax Settings1	
Configuring the H.323 gatekeeper1	
Configuring the SIP server1	
Registering or changing a gateway1	
Deleting a gateway	

9. Administrator Setting

Administrator Tools List	155
Using Administrator Settings	157
Programming, Changing, and Deleting Standard Messages	
Storing, Changing, and Deleting an Auto Document	
Deleting an Auto Document	
Programming, Changing and Deleting a Scan Size	.160
Deleting a scan size	
Printing Journal	
Counters	.162
Forwarding	. 162
Programming an End Receiver	. 163
Quitting the forwarding function	.164
Forwarding Mark	. 165
Memory Lock	. 165
ECM (Error Correction Mode)	.166
User Parameters	. 167
Changing the User Parameters	.171
Printing the User Parameter List	.172
Special Senders to Treat Differently	.172
Authorized Reception	.173
Forwarding	
Reception File Print Quantity	
Print 2 Sided	
Memory Lock	
Paper Tray	
Programming/Changing Special Senders	
Programming Initial Set Up of a Special Sender	
Deleting a Special Sender	
Printing the Special Sender List	
Box Settings	
Programming/changing Personal Boxes	
Deleting Personal Boxes	
Programming/changing Information Boxes	
Deleting Information Boxes	
Programming/changing Transfer Boxes	
Deleting Transfer Boxes	
Printing the Box List	
Transfer Report	
Programming a Confidential ID	
Programming a Polling ID	
Programming a Memory Lock ID	
Selecting Dial/Push Phone	
Storing or Printing Received Documents	
Reception Report e-mail	196
Setting a User for Viewing Received and Stored Documents	
Menu Protection Settings	
Folder Transfer Result Report	
Folder Transfer Result Report by e-mail	199

10.Solving Operation Problems

If an Error Report Is Printed	201
Turning Off the Main Power / In the Event of Power Failure	202
If an Error Occurs While Using Internet Fax	203
Error Mail Notification	203
Error Report (E-Mail)	203
Server-Generated Error E-mail	203

11.Appendix

Connecting the Machine to a Telephone Line and Telephone	
Connecting the Telephone Line	
Selecting the Line Type	
Optional Equipment	
Expansion Memory (32MB: DIMM)	
Extra G3 Interface Unit	
Specifications	
Compatible Machines	
Acceptable Types of Originals	
Acceptable original sizes	210
Original Sizes Difficult to Detect	
Maximum Values	214
INDEX	215

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

In this manual, the following symbols are used:

A WARNING:

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation that might result in death or serious injury if you misuse the machine without following the instructions under this symbol. Be sure to read the instructions, all of which are included in "Safety Information", *General Settings Guide*.

A CAUTION:

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation that might result in minor or moderate injury or property damage that does not involve personal injury if you misuse the machine without following the instructions under this symbol. Be sure to read the instructions, all of which are included in "Safety Information", *General Settings Guide*.

* The statements above are notes for your safety.

∰Important

If this instruction is not followed, paper might be misfed, originals might be damaged, or data might be lost. Be sure to read this.

Preparation

This symbol indicates information or preparations required prior to operating.

🖉 Note

This symbol indicates precautions for operation, or actions to take after abnormal operation.

Limitation

This symbol indicates numerical limits, functions that cannot be used together, or conditions under which a particular function cannot be used.

₽ Reference

This symbol indicates a reference.

[

Keys that appear on the machine's display panel.

[

Keys and buttons that appear on the computer's display.

Keys built into the machine's control panel.

Names of Major Functions

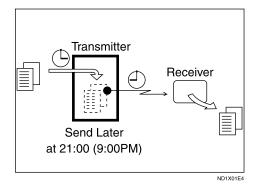
This machine's major functions are referred to in this manual as follows:

- Internet Fax (by specifying an e-mail address) \rightarrow Internet Fax
- Internet Fax (by specifying an IP address) \rightarrow IP-Fax

1. Transmission Mode

Sending at a Specific Time (Send Later)

Using this function, you can instruct the machine to delay transmission of your fax document until a specified later time. This allows you to take advantage of off-peak telephone charges without having to be by the machine at the time.



If you have a non-urgent fax, select Send Later with Economy Transmission when you scan it. Faxes are queued in memory and sent during Economy Transmission Time.

∰Important

If the machine is switched off for about one hour, all fax documents stored in memory are lost. If documents are lost for this reason, a Power Failure Report is automatically printed when the operation switch is turned on. Use this report to identify lost documents.

Limitation

This function is unavailable with Immediate Transmission. Use Memory Transmission.

🖉 Note

- You can specify up to 23 hours and 59 minutes.
- □ If the current time shown is not correct, change it. See "Timer Settings", *General Settings Guide*.
- Set the Economy Transmission Time to coincide with off-peak call charge time. See p.146 "Program Economy Time".
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the Quick Operation key allows you to omit step
 See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- **1** Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

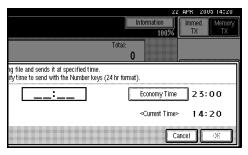
p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Transmission Mode].

				23	(APK)	2005 14:19
estination.			Informa		Immed TX	. Memory TX
	Total:					
No. Manual I	njuit 🛛 Adv. F	sdures			TX	File Status
EF GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6	BX	File Status
0000033 D LONDON 0 EFICE	COOODS3 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>0000061</u> XYZ CO.,	LOOOO73 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transn	nission Mode
[FF10E	1000111	LID [00013]	0000143 488		Sub	TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼	S	tore File

Press [Send Later].

Enter the time (24 hour format) using the number keys, and then press [OK].



The specified time is shown above the highlighted **[Send Later]**.

🖉 Note

- □ Press **[Economy Time]** to specify the economy time.
- When entering numbers smaller than 10, add a zero at the beginning.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- To cancel Send Later, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step].

D Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

🖉 Note

- □ To check the settings, press [Transmission Mode].
- **5** Specify a destination, and then press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

You can cancel the transmission setup for Send Later. See p.19 "Canceling a Transmission".

Sender Settings

This function tells receivers the fax sender's identity.

If the sender's e-mail address is registered in the destination list, the sender can receive transmission results by e-mail.

Also, if you enable the Stamp Sender Name, the registered sender's name (user name) appears on the receiver's sheet, lists, and report.

Preparation

Before using this function, you must register senders in the destination list and specify the User Name as [Sender]. See "Fax Destination", *General Settings Guide*.

🖉 Note

- If user authentication is set, the user logged in is set as sender. The transmission result is sent to the loggedin user's e-mail address.
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for Sender Settings. Quick Operation keys allow you to omit step 2. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- You can use Communication Result Report, etc. to check usage status by specified users. If user authentication is set, you can check usage by logged-in users. See p.162 "Printing Journal". If User ID is set to sender, you can count the number of uses by each user. See "Authentication Information", General Settings Guide.

1 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

✓ Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Transmission Mode].

				22	APK 200514:20
estination.			Informa	tion 100%	Immed. Memory TX TX
			tal: O		
No. Marual	nçurt 🛛 Adiy, F	adume 🔛			TX File Status
EF GH 1	IJK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6	RX File Status
LONDON O	TORONTO	1000061 XYZ CO.,	1000073 New York OFFICF	1/2	Transmission Mode
[000010]	000113	LID [00013]	[00014] ###	Lå.	Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼	Store File

Press [Sender Settings].

O Ready Set original and specify destination	Information 100
≈ &⇔ \ <u>6</u> 3 _	Total: 0
	soual input Adv. Faskures OK
Send Later	Sender Settings Priority TX
Confidential TX Polli	ng TX Polling RX

4 Select a sender.

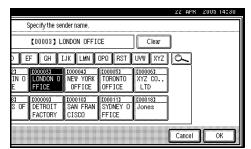
Attach Sender's Name Specify the sender name.			
Freq. AB CD EF GH IJK LMN OPQ RST UVW XYZ			
C000013 C000023 C000033 C000043 C000053 C000063 ABC COMP BERLIN 0 LONDON 0 NEW YORK TORONTO XYZ CO., ANY FFICE FFICE OFFICE OFFICE LTD			
C000073 C000083 C000103 C000113 C000183 New York PARIS OF DETROIT SAN FRAN SYDNEY 0 Jones 0FFICE FICE FACTORY CISC0 FFICE FICE			

5

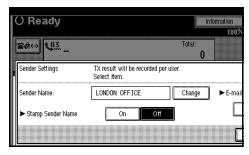
🖉 Note

□ If a destination protection code is set, the entry screen appears. Enter the protection code for destination using the number keys, and then press **[OK]**.

Confirm the selected sender, and then press [OK].



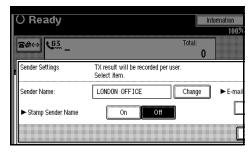
5 Select [On] or [Off] for the Stamp Sender Name.



Printing on the Receiver's Sheet

If you enable this function, the sender's name (user name) appears on the receiver's sheet, lists, and report.

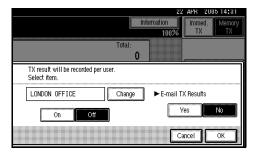
Select [On] for the Stamp Sender Name function.



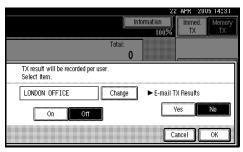
Confirming transmission results by e-mail

If the sender's e-mail address is registered you can specify whether or not to send the transmission result by e-mail to the sender. If you enable this function, the transmission result is sent to the registered mail address.

- If a user logs in with User ID, the transmission result is sent by e-mail to the logged-in user.
- You can confirm transmission results by using both the E-mail TX Results function, which sends the results by e-mail, and the Communication Result Report printed by the machine. You can set whether to use both of these together in User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 10, bit 6).
- Select [Yes] or [No] for the Email TX Results function.



Press [OK].



The display returns to that of step **B**.

🖉 Note

□ The selected sender's name appears above **[Sender Settings]**. The sender name is displayed in up to 14 characters, followed by an ellipsis (...).

Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

🖉 Note

□ To check the settings, press [Transmission Mode].

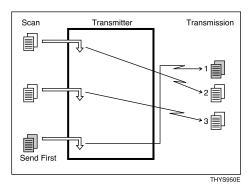
Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

□ To cancel the Sender Settings, cancel the transmission. See p.19 "Canceling a Transmission".

Priority Transmission

Documents you send with Memory Transmission are sent in the order they are scanned. Therefore, if several documents are queued in memory, the next document will not be sent immediately. However, by using this function you can have your document sent before other queued documents.



Limitation

This function is not available with Immediate Transmission. If this function is selected, the machine automatically switches to Memory Transmission.

🖉 Note

If there is already a document stored with this function or a transmission in progress, your document is sent after that document is transmitted.

1 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Transmission Mode].

				Zì	APK 2005 14:31
estination.			Informa		Immed. Memory TX TX
	Total:				
No. Manual I	nçuğt 🛛 Adiy, F	adures	•		TX File Status
EF GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	<u></u>	RX File Status
LONDON O	TORONTO	1000061 XYZ CO.,	1000073 New York OFFICF	1/2	Transmission Mode
[00010]	1000111	LID [00013]	C000143 #88	Lå.	Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	T	Store File

Press [Priority TX], and then press [OK].

O Ready Set original and specify destination.	Information
Registration No. Extended invest	Total: O Activ: Fasiliares
	OK Sender Settings Priority TX
Confidential TX Polling TX	Polling RX

The standby display appears.

🖉 Note

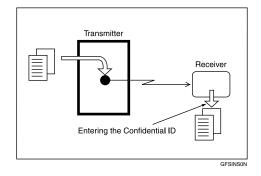
- □ To check the settings, press [Transmission Mode].
- Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

Press [Change / Stop TX File] to cancel the transmission. See p.19 "Canceling a Transmission".

Confidential Transmission

If you want to limit who views your document, use this function. The document is stored in memory at the other end and not printed until an ID is entered.



There are two types of Confidential Transmission:

Default ID

It is not necessary to enter an ID when transmitting.

The other party can print the document by entering the Confidential ID programmed in their machine.

ID Override:

Should you want to send a confidential document to a particular person at the other end, you can specify the Confidential ID that the receiver has to enter to see that document. Before you send the document, do not forget to tell the receiver the ID that must be entered to print the document.

- Limitation
- The destination machine must be of the same manufacturer and have the Confidential Reception function.
- □ The destination machine must have enough memory available.
- □ This function is not available with Internet Fax.

🖉 Note

- It is recommended that you program the Confidential ID in this machine beforehand. See p.192 "Programming a Confidential ID".
- □ An ID can be any 4-digit number (except 0000).
- If the destination machine is not of the same manufacturer, you can use Confidential Transmission with "SUB Code". See p.49 "SUB Code".

Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

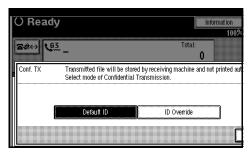
Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features> p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Transmission Mode].

estination.			Informa		APR 2005 14:32
No. 🛛 Manual II	yurt 🛛 Adv. F	To applications	tal: O		TX File Status
EF GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6	RX File Status
D LONDON O FFICE	COODOSCI TORONTO OFFICE	1000061 XYZ CO.,	<u>COOOO73</u> New York OFFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
2000103	000113	[00013]	0000143 ###		Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY U FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼	Store File

- B Press [Confidential TX].
- Depending on the Confidential Transmission type, use one of the following procedures:



Default ID

Check that [Default ID] is selected, and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

To cancel Confidential Transmission, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step
 I.

Override ID

- Select [ID Override].
- 2 Enter the Confidential ID (4-digit number) using the number keys, and then press [OK].

Ī	O Ready			Information
				100%
ľ	国 创会 1 63		Total	
				0
	Conf. TX 1	Fransmitted file will be Select mode of Confider	stored by receiving machine tial Transmission.	and not printed aut
	Specify 4 digit ID with the Number k	code eys.		
		Default ID	ID Override	

"ID Override: " and the entered Confidential ID are shown above the highlighted **[Confidential TX]**.

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- To cancel Confidential Transmission, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step
 I.

D Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

🖉 Note

□ To check the settings, press [Transmission Mode].

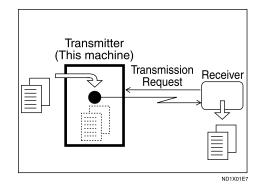
Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

You can cancel the transmission setup for Confidential Transmission. See p.19 "Canceling a Transmission".

Polling Transmission

Use Polling Transmission to leave an original in the machine memory for others to pick up. The document is sent when the other party calls you up.



Preparation

Before using ID Polling Transmission, you must register a Polling ID. See p.193 "Programming a Polling ID".

There are three types of Polling Transmission.

Free Polling Transmission

It is not necessary to enter the Polling ID during the procedure.

Anybody can poll the document from your machine. The machine sends it regardless of whether Polling ID's match.

Default ID Transmission

It is not necessary to enter the Polling ID during the procedure. The document will only be sent if the Polling ID of the machine trying to poll your document is the same as the Polling ID stored in your machine. Make sure in advance that both machines' Polling IDs are identical.

✤ ID Override Transmission

You must enter an Override Polling ID unique to the transmission. This ID overrides the ID stored in the machine. The user must supply this ID when they poll your machine. If the IDs match, the document is sent. Make sure in advance the other end knows the ID you are using.

Limitation

- Polling Transmission is allowed only if the receiver's machine has the Polling Reception function.
- Usually, only machines of the same manufacturer that support Polling Reception can perform ID Polling Transmission. However, if the Information Box File function is used, and the other party's fax machine supports Polling Transmission and the SEP function, you can still carry out Polling Transmission with an ID. See p.42 "Information Boxes".
- □ This function is not available with Internet Fax.

- Free Polling and Default ID Transmission allow only one file to be stored in memory.
- ID Override Polling Transmission allows a file to be stored in memory for each ID; you can store up to 400 files by changing IDs.
- You can set whether a Polling Transmission file is deleted in User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 11, bit 7). To save a file for frequent sending, set to "Standby (Save)".

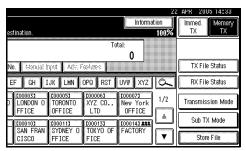
- Polling Transmission Clear Report allows you to verify Polling Transmission has taken place. See p.13 "Polling Transmission Clear Report".
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using this key allows you to omit step **2**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- The communication fee is charged to the receiver.
- **1** Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Transmission Mode].



Press [Polling TX].

4 Depending on the Polling Transmission mode, use one of the following procedures:

ľ	() Ready		Information 100%
	B& (0 <u>3</u> _		Total: O
00000 W	Polling TX	Transmitting mes Specify Polling m	sage against instruction from destination. iode.
	Free Polling TX	Default ID TX	ID Override Transmission
	Only Once	Save	

Free Polling Transmission

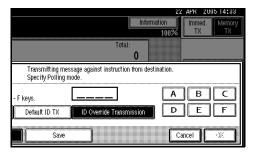
Check that [Free Polling TX] is selected.

Default ID Transmission

Select [Default ID TX].

ID Override Transmission

- Select [ID Override Transmission].
- Specify a 4-digit ID using the number keys and [A], [B], [C], [D], [E], and [F].



🖉 Note

- A Polling ID may be any four numbers (0 to 9) and characters (A to F), except 0000 and FFFF.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.
- Press [Only Once] or [Save] to delete or save the file after transmission.

- □ To delete the original immediately after transmission, select **[Only Once]**.
- □ To repeatedly send the original, select **[Save]**.
- □ To cancel Polling Transmission, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 3.

6 Press [OK].

"****************" appears.

The type of Polling Transmission is shown above the highlighted **[Poll-ing TX]**.

2 Press [OK].

🖉 Note

To check the settings, press [Transmission Mode].

8 Press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

You can cancel the transmission setup for Polling Transmission. See p.19 "Canceling a Transmission".

Polling Transmission Clear Report

This report allows you to verify Polling Transmission has taken place.

If E-mail TX Results is programmed in a Quick Operation key, you can have the report e-mail sent after transmission. See p.146 "Quick Operation Key".

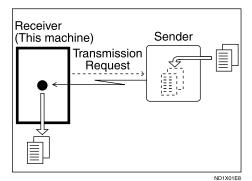
Limitation

This report is not printed if the User Parameters are set to allow the stored originals to be repeatedly sent (Save). See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 11, bit 7).

- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 03, bit 6).
- □ You can have a portion of the sent image printed on the report with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 7).
- You can check the result of Polling Transmission with the Journal. See p.27 "Printing the Journal"
- To view the report without text disruption, select a font of even character width in your e-mail application's settings.
- □ You can display a destination with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 4).
- You can indicate the sender's name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).

Polling Reception

Use this function to poll a document from another machine. You can also poll documents from many machines with only one operation (use Groups and Keystroke Programs to fully exploit this function).



Preparation

Before using ID Polling Transmission, you must register a Polling ID. See p.193 "Programming a Polling ID".

There are two types of Polling Reception.

Default ID/Free Polling Reception

Use this method for Free Polling or Default ID Polling. If the Polling ID is programmed in your machine, any document waiting in the transmitting machine with the same ID are received. If the other machine does not have any documents waiting with the same Polling ID, any documents that do not require ID are received (Free Polling).

✤ ID Override Polling Reception

You must enter an Override Polling ID unique to this transmission. This ID overrides the one stored in this machine. Your machine will receive any documents waiting in the transmitting machine that have matching ID's. If no ID's match, any documents that do not require IDs are received (Free Polling).

Limitation

- Polling Reception requires that the other machine is capable of Polling Transmission.
- Usually, you can only receive documents with a Polling ID from machines of the same manufacturer that support the polling function. However, if the other party's fax machine supports Polling Transmissions and the SEP function, and also has stored IDs, you can still perform Polling Reception. See p.50 "SEP Code".
- □ This function is not available with Internet Fax.

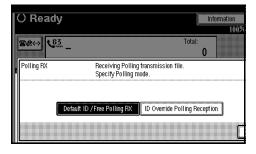
- To receive a document sent by Default ID Polling Transmission or ID Override Polling Transmission, it is necessary to specify the same Polling ID as the sender's. Free Polling Transmission does not require the same Polling ID.
- Polling Result Report allows you to verify Polling Reception has taken place. See p.16 "Polling Reception Result Report".
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **1**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Press [Transmission Mode].

				22	2 APK 2005 14:34
estination.			Informa	tion 100%	Immed. Memory TX TX
		To	tal: O		
No. Monual l	yut 🛛 Adv. F	odure:			TX File Status
EF GH I	JK LMN I	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	<u></u>	RX File Status
1000033 D LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO	1000061 XYZ CO.,	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
[00010]	C000113	[00013]	C000143 #88		Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	T	Store File

Press [Polling RX].

Depending on which method you are using, select one of the following procedures:



Default ID/Free Polling Reception

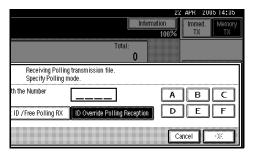
Check that [Default ID / Free Polling RX] is selected, and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel Polling Reception, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **2**.

ID Override Polling Reception

- Select [ID Override Polling Reception].
- Specify a 4-digit ID using the number keys and [A], [B], [C], [D], [E], and [F], and then press [OK].



"ID Override: " and the entered Polling ID are shown above the highlighted **[Polling RX]**.

🖉 Note

- A Polling ID may be any four numbers (0 to 9) and characters (A to F), except 0000 and FFFF.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel Polling Reception, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **2**.

Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

Polling Reception Reserve Report

This report is printed after Polling Reception is set up.

🖉 Note

- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 03, bit 3).
- You can have a destination displayed with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 4).
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).

Polling Reception Result Report

This report is printed after each Polling Reception is completed and shows its result.

If E-mail TX Results is programmed in a Quick Operation key, you can select whether a report e-mail is sent after reception. See p.146 "Quick Operation Key".

🖉 Note

- You can also check the result of a Polling Reception with the Journal. See p.27 "Printing the Journal".
- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 03, bit 4).
- To view the report without text disruption, select a font of even character width in your e-mail application's settings.

- □ You can display a destination with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 4).
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).

16

2. Checking and Canceling Transmission Files

After you have pressed the **[Start]** key (after scanning originals), you can check and edit the destination or settings of Memory Transmission. You can also cancel a transmission, change the settings of a transmission, print a stored file, print a list of stored files, and resend a file which the machine failed to transmit.

- Memory Transmission
- Internet Fax Transmission
- Send Later
- Sender Settings
- Priority Transmission
- Confidential Transmission
- Polling Reception
- Polling Transmission
- Transfer Request

Note 🖉

- □ If there are no files being sent, or stored by Memory Transmission, [Change / Stop TX File] does not appear on the display.
- □ You cannot check or edit a file being sent. Also a Confidential Transmission file or stored file to be printed as a report cannot be checked or edited.
- □ There are cases when a destination may not be selected as the destination appears as "*", depending on the security settings.

Displaying Confirmation of Transmission

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

O Rea Original ren	ady nains on exposu	re glass.	Change /	Stop TX File	Inform	
8 ¢…)	<u>63</u>			To		
	Registration N	D. Monual I F GH 1	ngud Adv. P Lijk Lmn	istante 📰	UYW XYZ	
COODO 13 ABC COM	1000023	LONDON O	TORONTO	<u>1000061</u> XYZ CO.,	1000071 New York	1/2
TOOOOB3 PARIS OF FICE		COODID3 SAN FRAN CISCO	COODINA SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>1000133</u> TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 444 FACTORY	T

2 Press [Check / Change Settings].

Change / Stop TX File	Select file to stop	transmission			_
Scanning Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.		0r
22Apr. 14:39	Memory TX	New York OFFICE	Ttl	1	
22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	TtI	1	
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl	1	
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl	1	
22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl	1	
Check / Change Set	ings Print File	Stop Transmissi	on		

3 Select a file to check.

Character TV File	Colord dia to alter	1. 2.4		
V	Select file to chec			
Scanning Date / Lime	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
22Apr. 14:39	Memory TX	New York OFFICE	Ttl 1	
22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	<u> </u>
00.4 11-00		V97 00 1 Th	741 4	
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD		
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl 1	
22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	<u> </u>
		*	4	
Check / Change Setti	ngs Print File	Stop Transmissio	on 📗	

🖉 Note

- If multiple destinations were specified, only the destination selected first appears.
- If multiple destinations were specified, only the number of destinations for unsent documents appears.

Confirm a transmission, and then press [Exit].

5 Press [Exit].

Canceling a Transmission

You can cancel transmission of a file while the file is being sent, stored in memory, or fails to transmit. All the scanned data is deleted from memory.

You can cancel a file for Memory Transmission. This function is useful to cancel a transmission when you notice a mistake in destination or with the originals after storing. To cancel Memory Transmission, search for the file to be canceled among the files stored in memory, and then delete it.

🖉 Note

- If you cancel a transmission while the file is being sent, some pages of your file may have already been sent and is received at the other end.
- If the transmission finishes while you are carrying out this procedure, transmission cannot be canceled.

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

O Rea Set original ar		tination	Change /	Stop TX File	Informa	tion 0092
<u>800</u> (G3 Registration N		nove Adv. 1	To Solutes	tal: O	
Freq. AB	4 4		IJK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6
ABC COMP ANY	BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	XYZ CO., LTD	New York OFFICE	1/2
PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	T

2 Make sure [Stop Transmission] is selected.

3 Select a file whose transmission you want to cancel.

Change / Stop TX File	Select file to stop	transmission		
Scanning Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
22Apr. 14:39	Memory TX	New York OFFICE	TtI	1
22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	TtI	1
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	TtI	1
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl	1
22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl	1
Check / Change Sett	ngs Print File	Stop Transmissi	on	

🖉 Note

- □ To display only the files being sent, press [Files under TX].
- If multiple destinations were specified, only the number of destinations for unsent documents appears.
- If multiple destinations were specified, only one destination number appears. To display all destinations, press [Check / Change Settings].

Press [Stop Transmission].

The selected file is deleted.

🖉 Note

- To cancel stopping transmission, press [Save].
- □ To cancel another transmission, repeat from step **3**.

D Press [Exit].

Deleting a Destination

You can delete destinations.

🖉 Note

□ If you delete a destination that is the only destination for a transmission, the transmission is canceled.

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

O Rea			Change /	Stop TX File	Informa	ation
Set original ar 審∕@ ↔ ₹	id specify des	tination.		To	tal:	99%
E	legistration N). Monual i	npiđ 🛛 Adv. F	odures	0	
Freq. AE				OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	Ρ
ABC COMP ANY	<u>COOOO23</u> BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	COOODSI TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	<u>COOOO71</u> New York OFFICE	1/2
LOOOOBJ PARIS OF FICE	LOOOO93 DETROIT FACTORY	1000101 SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD113 SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 211 FACTORY	•

2 Press [Check / Change Settings].

ſ	Change / Stop TX File	Select file to sto	p transmission		
I	Scanning Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	0
	22Apr. 14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	TtI 4	Ι
	22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	Γ
	22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl 1	Ι
	22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl 1	Ι
	22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	Ι
	Check / Change Set	tings Print File	Stop Transmissi	on	

Select the file from which you want to delete a destination.

ſ		Stop TX File Date / Time	Select file to chec Transmission Mode	k / change. Destination	Dest.	Or
	22Apr.	14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	TtI 4	Ι
	22Apr.	14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	Ι
	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl 1	Ι
	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	abc8defcompany.com	Ttl 1	Ι
	22 Apr.	14:37	Memory TX	012345678	TtI 1	Γ
	Check /	Change Setti	ngs Print File	Stop Transmissio	n	

Press [Change] for the destination you want to delete.

	Change Settings Destination and TX time ca		
8 %	» 🕼 0123456780	Change De	
Add	COOD113 SYDNEY OFFICE	Change	
	CO. 0123456789 CO00103 SAN FRANCISCO OFFICE	Change	
	V ^{G3} 123456789	Change	

🖉 Note

- Pressing switches the destination between fax number, Internet Fax address and IP-Fax address.
- Press [Clear] to delete the destination.

Check / Change Settings	Destination a	and TX time	e can be cha	nged.	
ade 1000113 SYDNEY		-		Total: A	A Prev.
Add	Contraction in	eia Adv	. Features	т Т	🗸 🔻 Next
F	1	2	3	>	
	4	5	6		
Pause	7	8	9	_	
Tone	×	0	#		Clear

🔗 Note

Pressing [Clear] deletes by single digits the fax number or IP-Fax address entered using the number keys. The Internet Fax address can be entirely deleted at once by pressing [Clear].

6 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

□ To delete another destination, repeat from step **§**.

2 Press [Exit].

Adding a Destination

🖉 Note

A destination cannot be added using a destination list.

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

() Rea			Change / S	Stop TX File	Informa	
Set original ar ☎ ₡↔ ९	d specify des	tination.		To	tal:	99%
F	— legistration No). Espual i	npi rt i A div, F	edures	0	
Freq. AE	CD E	F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	ð,
ABC COMP	COODO23 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0	COOCOSI TORONTO OFFICE	1000063 XYZ CO.,	1000071 New York OFFICE	1/2
[000003]	[00009]	£000103	2000113	1000133	C000143 #88	L.
PARIS OF FICE	FACTORY	SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	V

2 Press [Check / Change Settings].

Change / Stop TX File	Select file to stop	p transmission		
Scanning Date / Time	e Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
22Apr. 14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Ttl 4	4
22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl	1
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl	1
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl	1
22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl	1
Check / Change Set	tings Print File	Stop Transmiss	ion	

Select the file to which you want to add a destination.

ſ	Change / 9	Stop TX File	Select file to chec	k / change.				
	Scanning	Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest		Or	
	22Apr.	14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Ttl	4	Γ	
	22Apr.	14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl	1		
	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl	1	Γ	
	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl	1	Γ	
	22Apr.	14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl	1	Γ	
	Check / Change Settings Print File Stop Transmission							

Press [Add].

	hange Settings Destination and TX time can l	
8 2(**)	C000033 LONDON OFFICE	Change Dest 4s
Add	CO00113 SYDNEY OFFICE	Change
	CODO 103 SAN FRANCISCO OFFICE	Change
	VIII 123456789	Change

🔗 Note

- Pressing switches the destination between fax number, Internet Fax address and IP-Fax address.
- **5** Specify the destination using the number keys or soft (on-screen) keys.

Check / Change Settings	Destination an	d TX time can b	e changed.	
B &~ L ⁰³ _			Total: 4	Prev.
	i lectual ne	Adv. Fool		
	4	5 6		
Peige	7	8 9		
Tone	*	0 #	:	Clear

🖉 Note

- □ To add an e-mail address, press [Manual Input], and then specify the destination.
- You can also program a SUB Code or SEP Code by pressing [Adv. Features].

6 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

Repeat steps S through S, if you want to add another destination.

7 Press [Exit].

Changing Other Options

Changing the Transmission Time

You can change the transmission time specified with Send Later. See p.3 "Sending at a Specific Time (Send Later)".

You can also delete the transmission time. If the transmission time is deleted, the file is transmitted immediately.

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

O Rea Set original a		tination.	Change /	Stop TX File	Informa	tion 99%
8¢ ⇔ \	<u></u>				tal: O	- 11/
Freq. A	Registration N B CD E	F GH I	JK LMN	ioliano OPQ RST	UYW XYZ	اگر
ABC COMP ANY	<u>COOOO23</u> BERLIN O FFICE	LOODO33 LONDON O FFICE	COODOSI TORONTO OFFICE	<u>000061</u> XYZ CO., LTD	<u>COOOO71</u> New York OFFICE	1/2
COODES PARIS OF FICE	1000093 DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDJ SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD113 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>1000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	£000143 ### FACTORY	▲

2 Press [Check / Change Settings].

Change / Stop TX File	Select file to stop	transmission		_
Scanning Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
22Apr. 14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Ttl 4	Ι
22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	Ι
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl 1	Ι
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl 1	Ι
22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	
Check / Change Sett	ings Print File	Stop Transmissi	n	

3 Select the file for which you want to change or cancel the transmission time.

Change / Stop TX File	Select file to che	ck / change.		
Scanning Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
22Apr. 14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	TtI 4	
22Apr. 14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	TtI 1	
22Apr. 14:38	Memory TX	abc@defcompany.com	Ttl 1	
22Apr. 14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	
Check / Change Sett	ngs Print File	Stop Transmissi	on	

5 Press [Change TX Time].

Chang	ge Dest.	Send Later 23:00	Print File
Chan			Change TX Time Scanning Date / Time
Chang	<u> </u>		22/04 14:47 Original 1 sheets File No. 0211
Chan		Display List	Stop Transmission

Press [Clear], and then re-enter the transmission time using the number keys or select [Economy Time], and then press [OK].

e can be changed.				22 APK	2005-14	
Change	Dest. 4 sets	Send La	iter 23:00	Ch	Print File ande TX Ti	ne
ge transmission time with the hould be transmitted immediat						
23:00	Clear		Economy Tin	ne 了	23:00	
			<current td="" tim<=""><td></td><td>14:51</td><td></td></current>		14:51	

🖉 Note

- □ If you select **[Economy Time]**, the economy time already specified is entered. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- If you press [Transmit Now], the file is transmitted immediately. However, if there is a file on standby, that file is sent first.

7 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

Repeat from step **B**, if you want to change another transmission time.

8 Press [Exit].

Changing the SMTP Server Setting

You can change the settings for whether or not to bypass the SMTP server. See p.66 "Bypassing the SMTP Server", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

() Rea			Change /:	Stop TX File	Informa	tion
·······	G3	(ination.		To	tal:	99%
Freq. AB	Registration No 3 CD E	1 1	- 1 - 1	oplantes OPA RST	UVW XYZ	ام
COODO 13 ABC COMP ANY	E000021 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	1000051 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>COOOO63</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000071 New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOB1 PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COOO 103 SAN FRAN CISCO	COODINI SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>1000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	0000143 288 FACTORY	▲

2 Press [Check / Change Settings].

ſ	Character 10	N TV F.I.	Colored Allo do adve	- Anno 1997 (1997)		
I		Stop TX File	Select file to stop			
I	Scanning	Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
	22Apr.	14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Ttl 4	
I	22Apr.	14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	
I	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl 1	Ι
I	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	aaa®abcdcompany.com	Ttl 1	
	22 Apr.	14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	Ι
	Check /	Change Settir	ngs Print File	Stop Transmissio	n	

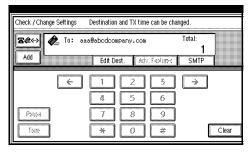
Select a file whose SMTP server setting you want to change.

Γ	Change / S	Stop TX File	Select file to chec	k / change.		
ľ	Scanning	Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
	22 Apr.	14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Ttl 4	Ι
	22Apr.	14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	Τ
	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl 1	
	22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	aaa®abcdcompany.com	Ttl 1	Ι
	22 Apr.	14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	Ι
	Check /	Change Settin	ıgs Print File	Stop Transmissio	n	

Press [Change].

Add	Add	De 1	J		y.com	ompany	aaa®abcd	To:	Ø	*
										i≣ hhA

5 Press [SMTP].



Select [Yes] or [No], and then press [Exit].



2 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

Repeat from step 3 to change the SMTP server settings of other recipients.

8 Press [Exit].

Printing a File

If you want to check the contents of a file that is stored in memory and not yet sent, use this procedure to print it out.

🖉 Note

- Confidential Transmission files are displayed, but cannot be printed.
- □ You can also print files that have not been successfully transmitted.

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

O Rea Set original an		tination.	Change /	Stop TX File	Informa	tion 99%
8¢~) [G3 Registration N		nord 🛛 Adv. f		tal: O	
Freq. AE	1 1	F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	<u>مہ</u> 1/2
ABC COMP ANY [00008]	BERLIN 0 FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	XYZ CO., LTD £000133	New York OFFICE	<u></u>
PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼

2 Press [Print File].

Change / S	Stop TX File	Select file to stop	transmission		
Scanning	Date / Time	Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.	Or
22Apr.	14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Tti 4	Γ
22 Apr.	14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	Ttl 1	L
22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Ttl 1	Ι
22Apr.	14:37	Memory TX	012345678	Ttl 1	Γ
Check /	'Change Setti	ngs Print File	Stop Transmi	ssion	

3 Select the file you want to print.

	Stop TX File Date / Time	Select file to print. Transmission Mode	Destination	Dest.		Or
22Apr.	14:47	Memory TX	LONDON OFFICE	Ttl	4	
22Apr.	14:39	Confidential TX	BERLIN OFFICE	TtI	1	
22Apr.	14:38	Memory TX	XYZ CO., LTD	Tti	1	
22Apr.	14:37	Memory TX	012345678	TtI	1	
Check /	'Change Settir	ngs Print File	Stop Transmissio	n		

🖉 Note

- If multiple destinations were specified, only the number of destinations for unsent documents appears.
- If you want two-sided printing, press [Print 2 Sides].
- □ To cancel printing, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step].

4 Press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

□ To cancel printing after pressing the **[Start]** key, press **[Stop Printing]**. The display returns to that of step **[**.

5 Press [Exit].

The standby display appears.

🖉 Note

Repeat from step **B**, if you want to print another file.

Resending a File

Machine memory stores documents that could not be successfully transmitted using Memory Transmission. Use this procedure to resend these documents.

Preparation

Set "Store documents in memory that could not be transmitted" to "On" in User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 24, bit 0).

🖉 Note

□ Files that could not be transmitted are kept for either 24 or 72 hours depending on how you program this function. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 24, bit 1).

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

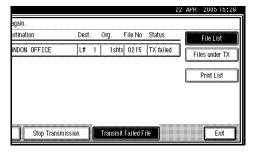
() Rea			Change / !	Stop TX File	Inform	
B &~~) \	G3.	tination.		To		99%
Freq. AB	Registration No 3 CD E		- 1 - 1	eciares OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	
ABC COMP ANY	COODO23 BERLIN O FFICE	COODOSI LONDON O FFICE	COODOSI TORONTO OFFICE	<u>000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	COODO71 New York OFFICE	1/2
COODORD PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COOO103 SAN FRAN CISCO	COODIII SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	COOO143 ALL FACTORY	

2 Press [Transmit Failed File].

	22	2 AP	R 2005	15:26
mission				
stination	Dest. Org. File No Status		File Li	st
NDON OFFICE	Ltt 1 1shts 0215 TX failed		Files und	er TX
			Print L	ist
Stop Transmissi	n Transmit Failed File			xit

3 Select the file you want to resend.

"TX failed" is displayed for files that could not be sent.



🖉 Note

- If multiple destinations were specified, only the destination you specify first appears.
- If multiple destinations were specified, only the number of destinations for unsent documents appears.
- To add a destination, press [Add], and then specify the destination.

4 Press [OK].

Solution Note

- □ To cancel transmissions, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **§**.
- Repeat from step S to resend another file.

5 Press [Exit].

The standby display appears. Transmission starts.

Printing a List of Files in Memory (Print TX File List)

Print this list if you want to find out which files are stored in memory and what their file numbers are. Knowing the file number can be useful (for example when erasing files).

🖉 Note

- The contents of a file stored in memory can also be printed. See p.24 "Printing a File".
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).

Press [Change / Stop TX File].

O Rea	ady and specify des	tination	Change / !	Stop TX File	Informa	ation 99%
8 ¢~)	G.S		novet 📕 Adv. F	To actures	tal: O	
Freq.	AB CD E		<u>.</u> 1	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	β
ABC COM	E000023 PBERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	1000051 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2
TOOOOSI PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	COODIII SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 488 FACTORY	

Press [Print List].

stination	Dest.		Org.	File No	Status	File List
N FRANCISCO OFFICE	Ttl	4	1 shts	0220	Standby	Files under TX
RLIN OFFICE	Ttl	1	1 shts	0219	Standby	Print List
7Z CO., LTD	Ttl	1	1 shts	0218	Standby	
c@defcompany.com	Ttl	1	1 shts	0217	Standby]
2345678	Tti	1	1 shts	0216	Standby	

🖉 Note

□ To cancel printing before pressing the **[Start]** key, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **2**.

Press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

 To cancel printing after pressing the [Start] key, press [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step 2.

4 Press [Exit].

3. Communication Information

Printing the Journal

The Journal contains information about the last 50 communications (maximum) made by your machine. It is printed automatically after every 50 communications (receptions and transmissions).

You can also print a copy of the Journal at any time by using the following procedure.

If the machine is equipped with the optional extra G3 interface unit, you can print the Journal of each line type.

∰Important

The contents of a Journal printed automatically are deleted after printing. Keep the journal if you require a record of transmissions and receptions. You can check a total of 200 communications (receptions and transmissions) on the display.

✤ All

Prints the results of communications in the order made.

Print per File No.

Prints only the results of communications specified by file number.

Print per User

Prints the results of communications by individual senders.

🖉 Note

- The sender name column of the Journal is useful when you need to program a special sender. See p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently".
- You can set whether the Journal is automatically printed after every 50 communications in User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 03, bit 7).
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).
- □ You can set whether the Journal is printed by line type. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 19, bit 1).
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **1**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- Depending on security settings, the destination may not appear.

Press [Information].

O Rea Set original	ady and specify des	tination.			Informa	
6 ¢~)	L G3 _				tal:	
	Registration N AB CD E	D. Manual I F GH I		opq RST	UVW XYZ	م
COODOTS ABC COMP ANY	C000021 PBERLIN 0 FFICE	LOODO33 LONDON O FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	<u>100006</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2
COODORD PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COODIOJ SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	E000133 TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 288 Factory	V

2 Press [Print Journal].

3 Select a printing mode.

	22 APR 2005 15:34
	Print Journal
	Select printing mode.
t Journal	All
ile Status	Print per File No.
ile Status	Print per User
ory Status	
	Exit

All

Select [All].

Print per File No.

Select [Print per File No.].

2 Enter a 4-digit file number.

Informati Select it		Print Journal Select printing mode
0	Printing Journal. Enter 4 digit file No., then press (Start).	
		Clear
	Cancel	

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

Printing per User

Select [Print per User].

2 Select a user.

Se	elect User	ę	Select the user			
11						
11	Freq. AE	CD E	F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ
	ABC COMP ANY	COOOO23 BERLIN O FFICE	COODOSI LONDON O FFICE	COOOO43 NEW YORK OFFICE	COOOOSD TORONTO OFFICE	<u>1000061</u> XYZ CO., LTD
	<u>COOOO71</u> New York OFFICE	1000083 PARIS OF FICE	<u>COOOO93</u> DETROIT FACTORY	COOO103 SAN FRAN CISCO	COOO113 SYDNEY O FFICE	[00018] Jones
		·			••••••	

🔗 Note

- Press [Cancel] if the user is not registered. The display returns to that of step].
- □ Press **[Clear]** to return to the previous screen if a wrong user name is selected.
- **3** Press [OK] after checking the user name shown on the display.

🖉 Note

- Press [Cancel] if a wrong user name is selected. The display returns to that of step].
- Press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

□ To cancel a file printing, press **[Stop Printing]**. The display returns to that of step **§**.

5 Press [Exit] twice.

Journal

		* * *]	Journal (1. A	pr. 2005 1	8:38)	* * *		P. 1
							,	ABC.COMPANY
<tx> Date</tx>	Time	Destination	Mode	TXtime	Page	Result	User Name	(Manual print) File No.
1. Apr.	14:35	NEW YORK OFFICE	G3TESM	0'31"	P.1	ок		0528
	14:36	LONDON OFFICE	G3TESM	0'07"	P.2	OK		0529
	14:40	SHARE FOLDER	⊡TSM@	0'01"	P.1	OK		0530
	18:27	LAN_Fax>	*DM	0'02"	P.1		DESIGN	0536
	18:28	NEW YORK OFFICE	G3TEDM	0'53"	P.1	OK	DESIGN	0536
<rx></rx>	18:35	aaa@abc.company.com:3	⊗TS	0'01"	P.1			0537
Date	Time	Sender	Mode	RXtime	Page	Result	User Name	File No.
1. Apr.	14:45	PARIS OFFICE	G3RES	0'04"	P.1	ОК		0531
	14:49	NEW YORK OFFICE	G3RESC	0'11"	P.2	OK		0532
	15:00	LONDON OFFICE	G3RED	0'03''	P.1	OK		0533
	15:30	LA FACTORY	G3RES	0'02''	P.1	OK		0534
	15:32	BERLIN OFFICE	G3REF	0'03"	P.1	+OK		0535
ГХ Со	unt 00	021		R X Cou	nt	00020		
# : Bat	ch	C : Confidential		\$: Trar	sfer		P : Polling	
M: Me	mory	L : Send later		@ : Forv	vardin	g	E : ECM	
S : Sta	ndard	D : Detail		F : Fine			U : Super H	Fine
> : Red	luction	H : Stored/D.Serv	er	* : LAN	I-Fax		+ : Deliver	у
Q : RX	Notice Rec	A : RX Notice		🧼: Mai	1		≪⇒∶ IP-FAΣ	K

1. Printing date

Shows the date and time the report was printed.

2. Programmed Fax Header

Shows the sender name programmed for printing.

3. Date

Shows the transmission or reception date.

4. Time

Shows the transmission or reception start time.

5. Other end

✤ For fax destinations

- Shows the name (for display) programmed by the other end.
- Shows the programmed fax number if the name (for display) was not programmed.
- If neither name nor fax number was programmed by the other end, an entered fax number or a name programmed in a destination list is shown for transmissions.

🖉 Note

To prioritize a fax number or name programmed in the destination list, contact your service representative.

For Internet Fax destinations

At time of transmission, it shows the e-mail address or name programmed in the destination list. At time of reception, it shows the e-mail address of the sender.

At time of broadcasting transmission, it shows the number of destinations after the e-mail addresses or names of destination.

🖉 Note

When documents are transmitted from the computer to the machine, --LAN-Fax --> appears. To check if the documents are sent to the receiver, confirm the same File No.

For IP-Fax destinations

Shows the IP-Fax destination or name programmed in the destination list. The fax destination details appear on the reception report.

For Folder destinations

Shows the name programmed in the destination list for forwarding.

6. Communication mode

- For fax transmissions and receptions After "T" for outgoing faxes or "R" for incoming faxes, the communication mode appears in alphabetical letters or symbols. If the optional extra G3 interface unit is installed, "G3-1", "G3-2", or "G3-3" appears.
- For Internet Fax transmissions and receptions

After *◆*, and "T" for outgoing e-mail or "R" for incoming e-mail, the communication mode appears in alphabetical letters or symbols. Outgoing email set for Reception Notice of E-mail Options is indicated by a "Q", whereas "A" appears with reception notice e-mails.

- For IP-Fax transmissions and receptions After <->, and "T" for outgoing faxes or "R" for incoming faxes, the communication mode appears in alphabetical letters or symbols.
- For forwarding to the folder destinations Shows 🗅 (folder mark).

7. Communication time

Shows time taken for transmissions or receptions.

8. Number of pages

Shows the number of pages transmitted or received.

9. Communication result

Shows the result of transmissions or receptions.

OK: All pages were properly transmitted or received. When Reception Notice is activated using the Internet Fax E-mail Options, receipt of Reception Notice is shown. The results of received documents that were routed are preceded by "+".

--: The Internet Fax document was sent to the mail server programmed in this machine. (However , this does not mean the e-mail was delivered.) When using LAN-Fax, the results of communication from a computer to this machine are shown.

Error: A communication error occurred.

D: Power was disconnected during communication. Not all fax documents were transmitted.

10. User name

Shows the sender's name.

11. File number

Shows file management numbers.

Checking the Transmission Result (TX File Status)

You can browse a part of the Journal on the display.

🖉 Note

- Only the transmission result of the last 200 communications (receptions and transmissions) are shown.
- You can view sent fax documents and their lists, using a network computer Web Image Monitor. For details, see the Web Image Monitor's Help.
- If a transmission is completed while you are using this function, the result will not appear. To view the latest result, exit TX File Status, and then try again.
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **1**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Press [Information].

O Rea Set original ar	dy nd specify des	ination.			Informa	
8 &~~) \	63 Registration No	. Nonual I	nput 🛛 Adv. F	adares 📕	tal:	
Freq. A	B CD E	F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6
ABC COMP ANY	BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	XYZ CO., LTD	New York OFFICE	1/2
PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COODION SAN FRAN CISCO	COODINI SYDNEY O FFICE	COODI33 TOKYO OF FICE	COODIAL ARE FACTORY	T

2 Select [TX File Status].

3 Check the transmission results.

TX File Status		Displaying transmission file status.	
Date / Time		Destination	Original C
22Apr.	15:59	InternetFaxA@abcdcompany.com	2
22Apr.	15:56	NEWYORK DIV.	2
22Apr.	15:53	NEWYORK DIV.	1
22Apr.	15:53	InternetFaxD@abcdcompany.com	1
22Apr.	15:51	InternetFaxA@abcdcompany.com	1
22Apr.	15:50	NEWYORK DIV.	1

Transmission results are displayed, from the latest result down, in groups of six.

🖉 Note

- When a fax is sent, "Destination" shows the Own Fax Number or Fax Header information of the receiver. The e-mail address and name programmed in the destination list appears in the "To" field of the sent Internet Fax document. For a transmission from a computer, "-- LAN-Fax -->" is shown.
- Depending on security settings, the destination may appear as *.

Press [Exit] twice.

The standby display appears.

🔗 Note

When documents are transmitted from the computer to the machine, --LAN-Fax --> appears. To check if the documents are sent to the receiver, confirm the same File No.

Checking the Reception Result (RX File Status)

You can browse a part of the Journal on the display.

🖉 Note

- Only the reception result of the last 200 communications (receptions and transmissions) are shown.
- You can view received fax documents and their lists, using a network computer Web Image Monitor. For details, see the Web Image Monitor's Help.
- If a document is received while you are using this function, the result will not appear. To view the latest result, exit RX File Status, and then try again.
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **1**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Press [Information].

O Rea Set original	LCLY and specify des	tination.			Informa	tion
8 \$~~]	Registration No).	nova 📕 Adv. F	adona 📕	0	
	NB CD E	F GH I	UK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6
ABC COMP ANY	ECOODO23 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£00006</u> 3 XYZ CO., LTD	<u>1000073</u> New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOSI PARIS OF FICE	C000091	COODIO SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD111 SYDNEY O FFICE	E000133 TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 488 Factory	L*

2 Press [RX File Status].

3 Check the reception results.

RX File Sta	atus	Displaying reception file status.	
Date / Time		TX Station	Original (
22Apr.	16:02	NEWYORK DIV.	3
22Apr.	16:01	NEWYORK DIV.	1
22Apr.	15:56	InternetFaxA@abcdcompany.com	1
22Apr.	15:53	InternetFaxD@abcdcompany.com	1
22Apr.	15:51	InternetFaxA@abcdcompany.com	1
22Apr.	13:33	NEWYORK DIV.	1

Reception results are displayed, from the latest result, in groups of six.

🖉 Note

When a fax or IP-Fax is received, Transmission Station shows the sender's fax number or Fax Header information. The sender's e-mail address appears in the "From" field of received Internet Faxes.

4 Press [Exit] twice.

Displaying the Memory Status

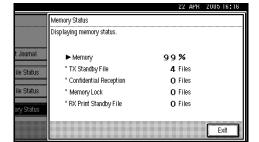
Use this function to display a summary of current memory usage. Items shown are the percentage of free memory space, the number of received confidential documents, the number of files to be sent, the number of Memory Lock files and the number of received documents to be printed.

Press [Information].

O Rea	ady Land specify des	tination	Change /	Stop TX File	Informa	tion 999
8 &~)	<u> (03</u> _				tal: O	
Freq.		F GH I	UK LMN	opo RST	UVW XYZ	م
ABC COM ANY	FFICE	COODO33 LONDON O FFICE	1000051 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>t00006</u> 3 XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOSI PARIS O FICE	F DETROIT FACTORY	E000103 SAN FRAN CISCO	COODINI SYDNEY O FFICE	E000133 TOKYO OF FICE	COODIAL ARE FACTORY	T

2 Press [Memory Status].

3 Check the memory status.



🖉 Note

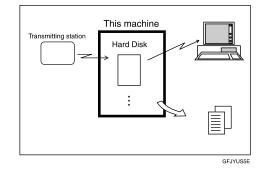
- \Box "Others" is displayed when:
 - storing attachment files. See p.66 "Sending an Auto Document".
 - storing Reception Request files. See p.52 "Transfer Station".
 - storing originals in the Information Boxes. See p.42 "Storing Documents in Information Boxes".
 - sending to the Personal Box. See p.41 "Printing Personal Box Documents".
- If you made the machine save received documents on the hard disk, see "RX Print Standby File" on the display to check the number.

4 Press [Exit] twice.

Printing/Deleting Received and Stored Documents (Print/Delete Stored RX File)

The optional printer/scanner unit is required.

You can print documents that are received and stored on the hard disk. You can also delete unwanted documents.



Preparation

Make the settings for received and stored documents before using this function. See p.195 "Storing or Printing Received Documents".

🖉 Note

- If you have selected to store received documents and specified an e-mail address for notification of receipt, fax reception notification can be sent to that e-mail address. See p.196 "Reception Report e-mail".
- ☐ You can store up to 400 received documents on the hard disk.
- You can view and print received and stored documents using a Web Image Monitor or DeskTop-Binder. See p.123 "Viewing Fax Information Using a Web Browser" or the DeskTopBinder's manuals and Help.

Printing Received and Stored Documents

Use the following procedure to print documents saved on the hard disk.

🖉 Note

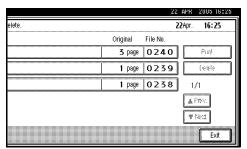
- □ This function allows you to print only received and stored documents.
- You cannot print and delete received documents using the Document Server function.
- □ You can specify and print multiple documents. You can specify a maximum of 30 documents at one time.

Press [Information].

O Rea Set original	ady and specify des	tination.			Informa	
8 &~)	<u>63</u>			Tơ	tal: O	
	Registration N AB CD E	D. Manual I F GH J	<u> </u>	opo RST	UVW XYZ	0
COODO 13 ABC COMP ANY	000021	LONDON O FFICE	LOODOSJ TORONTO OFFICE	<u>toooo61</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/
COODORS PARIS OF FICE	FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	1000111 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>1000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	1000143 488 FACTORY	

2 Press [Print / Delete Stored RX File].

Select a file to be printed, and then press [Print].



🖉 Note

- □ To cancel printing, press [Cancel].
- To delete the document after printing, press [Delete File after Printing].
- To perform two-sided printing, press [Print on 2 Sides] before pressing the [Start] key.
- Select the printing mode, and then press the [Start] key.

5 Press [Exit] twice.

The standby display appears.

Deleting Received and Stored Documents

Use the following procedure to delete documents stored on the hard disk.

🖉 Note

- You cannot delete a document while another person is previewing or printing it using a Web Image Monitor or DeskTopBinder.
- You can specify and delete multiple documents. You can specify a maximum of 30 documents at one time.

Press [Information].

() Rea					Informa	tion
8200 (1818) 82¢↔ (1	63.	tination.		To		997
	Registration Ni B CD E	D. Monual I F GH 1	IJK LMN	Sector State	UVW XYZ	
COODDID ABC COMP ANY	COODO23 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	LOOOOSI TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£00006</u> 1 XYZ CO., LTD	C000071 New York OFFICE	1/2
TOOOOBJ PARIS OF FICE	LOODO93 DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD113 SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	1000141 288 FACTORY	l*

- 2 Press [Print / Delete Stored RX File].
- Select a file to be deleted, and then press [Delete].

].				16:27
		File No.		
	3 page	0240		Print
	1 page	0239		Delete
	1 page	0238	1	/1
			Å	Frev.
			¥	Next
				Exit

4 Press [Yes].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel a deletion, press [No]. The display returns to that of step 3.

5 Press [Exit] twice.

Printing a Confidential Document

This function is designed to prevent unauthorized users from reading your documents. If someone sends you a document using Confidential Transmission, it is stored in memory but not automatically printed. To print the document you have to enter the Confidential ID Code. When your machine has received a confidential document, the **Confidential File** (PP) indicator lights.

Preparation

Before using this function, program your Confidential ID. See p.192 "Programming a Confidential ID".

∰Important

If the main power switch is off for about an hour, all confidential documents are deleted. When this happens, the Power Failure Report is printed so you can confirm which documents have been deleted. See p.202 "Turning Off the Main Power / In the Event of Power Failure".

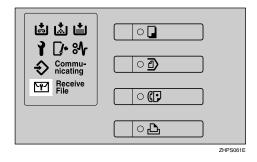
Limitation

- You must program the Confidential ID for Confidential Reception to work.
- This function is not available with Internet Fax.

🖉 Note

 You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step 2. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

1 Confirm that the Confidential File indicator is lit.



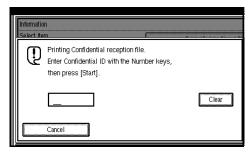
2 Press [Information].

O Re: Set original	ady Land specify des	tination.			Informa	ation
8 &~>	L <u>G</u> <u>3</u> _				tal: O	
Freq.	Registration N	D. Examual I F GH 1	ngat Adv. P IJK LMN	Sectory of the sector	UVW XYZ	a
COODO 13 ABC COM ANY	[00002]	LOODO33 LONDON O FFICE	1000051 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>100006</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/
COODOBI PARIS O FICE	F DETROIT FACTORY	<u>Coooloj</u> San Fran CISCO	1000111 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>COODI33</u> TOKYO OF FICE	E000143 ### FACTORY	•

B Press [Print Confidential RX File].

🖉 Note

- □ If no confidential documents have been received, the message "No reception file." is shown. Press [Exit].
- 4 Enter a 4-digit Confidential ID using the number keys, and then press the [Start] key.



The Confidential ID differs depending on the Sender's specifications.

🖉 Note

- You must enter the Confidential ID programmed in this machine, if the received file has no Confidential ID.
- You must enter the Confidential ID programmed by the sender. Confirm the sender's Confidential ID in advance.
- □ If the Confidential IDs or Personal Confidential IDs do not match, the message "No reception file under specified Confidential ID." appears. Press [Exit] to cancel the operation, and then check the Confidential ID or Personal Confidential ID with the other party, and then try again.

5 Press [Exit].

The standby display appears.

File (M) indicator is lit.

The Confidential File indicator also lights if the machine received a document with a SUB Code. Check the Personal Boxes.

🖉 Note

Print from the Personal Box when a file is sent from another party with a SUB Code attached. See p.41 "Printing Personal Box Documents".

Confidential File Report

When this function is turned on, this report is printed whenever your machine receives a confidential document.

🖉 Note

 You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 0).

Printing a File Received with Memory Lock

This is a security function designed to prevent unauthorized users from reading your documents. If Memory Lock is switched on, all received documents are stored in memory and are not automatically printed. To print the documents, you have to enter the Memory Lock ID Code. When your machine has received a document with Memory Lock, the **Confidential File** (**P**) indicator blinks.

Preparation

Before using this function, program your Memory Lock ID. See p.194 "Programming a Memory Lock ID".

Before using this function, set Memory Lock to On. See p.175 "Memory Lock".

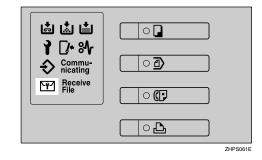
Important

If the main power switch is turned off for about an hour, all documents protected by Memory Lock are deleted. When this happens, the Power Failure Report is printed so you can confirm which documents have been deleted. See p.202 "Turning Off the Main Power / In the Event of Power Failure".

🖉 Note

- If Memory Lock and received document storage are both set to on, Memory Lock is unavailable and received documents become stored documents. For details, see p.195 "Storing or Printing Received Documents" and p.34 "Printing/Deleting Received and Stored Documents (Print/Delete Stored RX File)".
- Even when Memory Lock is available, if free memory is insufficient, reception is not possible.

- You can also apply a Memory Lock to documents that come only from certain senders. See p.175 "Programming/Changing Special Senders".
- Documents received by Polling Reception are automatically printed even if this function is switched on.
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **2**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- Confirm that the Confidential File indicator is blinking.



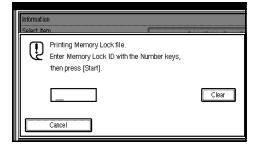
Press [Information].

	O Ready Set original and specify destination.					
8¢~) (G3	tination.		Tơ	0	99%
	Registration N		nput Adv. P	Search I		
Freq. AB	3 CD E	F GH I COOOD33 LONDON O		0PQ RST <u> 1000063</u> XYZ CO	000071 New York	1/2
ANY	FFICE	FFICE	OFFICE	LTD	OFFICE	
PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼

Press [Print Memory Lock].

🖉 Note

□ If no documents were received while Memory Lock was switched on, the message "No reception file." is shown. Press [Exit]. Enter a 4-digit Memory Lock ID with the number keys, and then press the [Start] key.



🖉 Note

□ If the Memory Lock ID does not match, the message "Specified code does not correspond to programmed Memory Lock ID." appears. Press [Exit] and retry after checking the Memory Lock ID.

5 Press [Exit].

Personal Boxes

Preparation

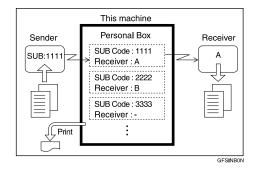
Before using this function, set the Personal Box in advance. See p.182 "Programming/changing Personal Boxes".

Personal Boxes

This function lets you set up the machine so that incoming documents addressed to certain users are stored in memory instead of being printed out immediately.

Each user must be assigned a SUB Code (Personal Code) that was designated as a Personal Box beforehand. When the other party sends their document, they specify the SUB Code of the receiver. When the document is received, it is stored in the Personal Box with the matching SUB Code.

This enables several individuals or departments to share a single fax machine yet be able to differentiate between documents. Furthermore, if you specify a receiver for the Personal Box, instead of being stored in memory, incoming documents with this SUB Code appended are forwarded directly to the destination you specify. You can specify a fax number, email address or IP-Fax destination as the receiver. See p.182 "Programming/changing Personal Boxes" for details about programming receivers. For details about the SUB Code, see p.181 "Box Settings".



- To be able to receive documents into a Personal Box, you must inform the sender of the SUB Code programmed for that Personal Box and ask them to send the document using SUB Code Transmission with that SUB Code. See p.49 "SUB Code".
- When documents have been received into Personal Boxes, the Confidential Reception/Memory Lock indicator lights and the Confidential File Report is printed. See p.37 "Confidential File Report".
- If a receiver is assigned, the delivered document is deleted.
- If a receiver is not assigned, you can print the received documents on this machine. See p.41 "Printing Personal Box Documents".

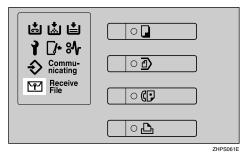
Printing Personal Box Documents

Follow these steps to print a document received into a Personal Box.

🖉 Note

If you print a Personal Box document, it is deleted.

Make sure that the Confidential File indicator is lit.



2 Press [Information].

O Rea Set original ar		tination.			Informa	tion
	G3			To assiures	· ·	
Freq. A	Registration Ni		JK LMN	OPQ RST	UYW XYZ	<u>م</u>
ABC COMP ANY	E000023 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£00006</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000071 New York OFFICE	1/2
LOOOO81 PARIS OF FICE	COODO93 DETROIT FACTORY	COODIOJ SAN FRAN CISCO	COODIII SYDNEY O FFICE	COODISI TOKYO OF FICE	COODIAJ ARR FACTORY	

B Press [Print Personal Box File].

4 Select the box with the document you want to print.

Personal Box
Select Box to print file of.
1 HR DIVISION

When a password is required

The display appears, when the selected Personal Box password is set in advance.

🖉 Note

- The password is programmed in "Administrator Tools". See p.182 "Programming/changing Personal Boxes".
- Enter the password, and then press [OK].

 Ū	Enter password with the Number keys, then press [OK].
	Space
	Cancel OK

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel entering a password, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.

5 Press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

□ To stop printing, press [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step 4.

6 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

 To print a document in another Personal Box, repeat from step
 4.

Press [Exit].

Information Boxes

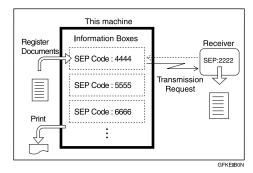
Preparation

Before using this function, set the Information Box in advance. See p.185 "Programming/changing Information Boxes".

Information Boxes

Use the Information Box function to set up the machine as a Document Server. By scanning documents into Information Boxes, other parties can receive these documents whenever they request them.

For details about the SEP Code, see p.181 "Box Settings".



- You can program documents for this function with "Store / Delete / Print Information Box File". See p.42 "Storing Documents in Information Boxes".
- For other parties to be able to retrieve a document programmed in an Information Box, you need to inform them of the SEP Code assigned to that Information Box.

- When an SEP Code Polling Reception request is made by another party, the SEP Code they specify is matched against the SEP Codes programmed in that Information Boxes. If a code matches, the document stored in the Information Box is sent to the other party automatically. See p.50 "SEP Code".
- You can check the contents of Information Boxes with "Store / Delete / Print Information Box File". See p.44 "Printing Information Box Documents".
- You can set a password for Information Boxes in advance. A password can be set in "Administrator Tools". See p.185 "Programming/changing Information Boxes".

Storing Documents in Information Boxes

Follow these steps to store a document in an Information Box.

🖉 Note

- □ One Information Box stores one file.
- The stored file is not deleted automatically. If you want to delete a stored file, see p.45 "Deleting Information Box Documents".

Press [Information].

	nd specify des				Informa	
≣ #↔ \	<u>63</u> _			To		
F	Registration N). Manual l	npid Adv. I			
Freq. AB	3 CD E	F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	l O
ABC COMP ANY	COODO23 BERLIN O FFICE	LOODO33 LONDON O FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2
DARIS OF FICE	<u>COOOO93</u> DETROIT FACTORY	1000101 SAN FRAN CISCO	COODI11 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>COOO133</u> TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 288 FACTORY	

2 Press [Store / Delete / Print Information Box File].

Select the box in which you want to store the file.

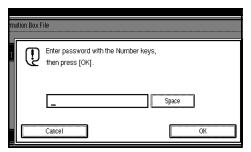
Store / Delete / Print Information Box File	
Select Box to store file.	
3 5678 MARKETING DIVISI SERVICE SECTION	
Store File Delete File Print File	

🔗 Note

- □ When there are pre-programmed files, a file mark is displayed at the end of the Box Name.
- □ A message is displayed if you select a box with a file stored in it. Press **[Yes]** when changing the file. The stored original file is overwritten.

When a password is required

• Enter the password, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel entering a password, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **§**.

Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.



🖉 Note

- You can also select the following settings:
 - Book Fax
 - 2 Sided Original (The optional ADF is required.)
 - Stamp (The optional ADF is required.)

✓ Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

5 Press the **[Start]** key.

The machine starts to scan the original.

To stop scanning, press **[Stop Scanning]**. The display returns to that of step **§**.

6 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

□ To store a document in another Information Box, repeat from step **B**.

2 Press [Exit].

Printing Information Box Documents

Follow these steps to print a document stored in an Information Box.

Press [Information].

	O Ready Set original and specify destination.					
8¢ ⇔ \	<u>63</u> _				tal: O	
	Registration No). Esoual i	nçurt 🛛 Aciv. F			
Freq. AB			IJK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	O.
ABC COMP	<u>0000023</u> BERLIN 0	1000033 London 0	TORONTO	<u>£000063</u> XYZ CO.,	1000071 New York	1/2
ANY	FFICE	FFICE	OFFICE	LTD	OFFICE	*
DARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	COODINA SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	1000141 411 FACTORY	▼

- 2 Press [Store / Delete / Print Information Box File].
- B Press [Print File].
- 4 Select the box that contains the stored file you want to print.



🖉 Note

You cannot select a box that has no stored file.

When a password is required

• Enter the password, and then press [OK].

ma Df_	ation Box F	le
I	Ū.	Enter password with the Number keys, then press [OK].
		Space

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel entering a password, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.
- **5** Press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

- If you want two-sided printing, press [Print 2 Sides] before pressing the [Start] key.
- To stop printing before pressing the [Start] key, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 4.
- To stop printing after pressing the [Start] key, press [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step].

6 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

□ Repeat from step ④ to print another stored file in the box.

2 Press [Exit].

Deleting Information Box Documents

Follow these steps to delete a file stored in an Information Box.

Press [Information].

O Rea Set original a	dy nd specify desi	tination.			Informa	
8 ¢↔) \	<u>63</u>				(al): 0	
Freq. A	Registration No 3 CD E		1 1		UVW XYZ	
ABC COMP ANY	E000021 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	1000051 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>KO00063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	<u>COOOO71</u> New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOSI PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD113 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>1000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	6000143 488 FACTORY	

2 Press [Store / Delete / Print Information Box File].

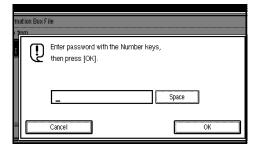
B Press [Delete File].

Select the box that contains the stored file you want to delete.



When a password is required

• Enter the password, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel entering a password, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.

5 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ To stop deleting, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step [].

6 Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

Repeat from step 4 to delete another stored file in another box.

2 Press [Exit].

4. Other Transmission Features

Handy Dialing Functions

Chain Dial

This allows you to compose a telephone number from various parts, some of which may be stored in Destination keys and some of which may be entered using the number keys.

Limitation

□ You cannot use this function with Internet Fax transmission.

🖉 Note

- The total number of digits that can be entered is up to 128 using Destination keys and number keys.
- For Memory Transmission and Immediate Transmission, insert a pause between parts of a number. For On Hook Dial and Manual Dial, no pause is needed.
- The Advanced Features function programmed in the destination list is unavailable.

(Example) 01133-1-555333

Assume that 01133 is stored in a Destination key.

1 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

- **2** Press the Destination key that is programmed "01133".
- E Press the [Pause/Redial] key.
- Enter [1], [5], [5], [5], [3], [3], [3], [3] using the number keys.
- **5** Press the **[Start]** key.

Redial

The machine stores the last 10 destinations specified in each transmission method. This function saves time when you are sending to the same destination repeatedly, as you do not have to enter the destination again.

Limitation

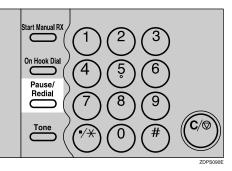
- □ The following kinds of destinations are not stored:
 - Destinations specified using the destination list
 - Destinations specified as a group destination
 - Destinations dialed as Receiving Stations for Transfer Request
 - Destinations dialed using the external telephone
 - Destinations dialed by Redial (regarded as already stored in memory)
 - Second and later destinations broadcasted to
 - Destinations specified in the LAN-Fax Driver on the computer
- To redial a fax number, do not dial any numbers before you press the [Pause/Redial] key. If you press the [Pause/Redial] key after entering numbers using the number keys, a pause is entered instead.

🖉 Note

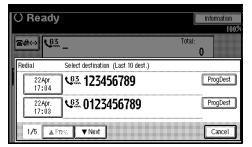
You can specify Internet Fax and IP-Fax destinations using the Redial function. Select this function before pressing [Manual Input].

Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

2 Press the [Pause/Redial] key.



3 Select the destination you want to redial to.



🖉 Note

- When the date and time the original was scanned appears as a key, select by pressing it.
- When you press [ProgDest], you can register a selected recipient in the destination list. See p.40 "Registering Entered Destinations to the Address Book", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>.

Advanced Features

SUB Code

Normally you can only use Confidential Transmission to send documents to fax machines of the same manufacturer that have the Confidential Reception function. See p.9 "Confidential Transmission". However, if the other machine supports a similar function called "SUB Code", you can send fax documents to the other party using this method instead.

For details about the SUB Code, see p.181 "Box Settings".

Limitation

□ A SUB Code cannot be used with Internet Fax.

🖉 Note

- **The ID can be up to 20 digits long.**
- □ You can enter numbers, *, #, and spaces to program an ID.
- Make sure the number of digits in the ID matches the specification of the machine to which you are sending.
- You can store IDs in the destination list and Programs. See "Fax Destination", General Settings Guide. See p.129 "Registering and Changing Keystroke Programs".
- The SUB Code is printed on all reports. This is possible only if the SUB Code is specified in [Adv. Features] using the number keys.

1 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Enter the fax number of a destination or an IP-Fax destination.

Press [Adv. Features].

O Ready Set original and s		instion			Informa	tion 10092
		45678_	-	Ē	ProgDest	1002
Add Reg	istration No	1		eatures	11/10 2 2/2	A
COODO13 CO ABC COMP B	00023 ERLIN O	1000033 LONDON 0	1000051 TORONTO	<u>1000063</u> XYZ CO.,	LOOOO73 New York	1/2
		FFICE <u> cooolo</u> SAN FRAN	OFFICE COOO113 SYDNEY 0	LIU 2000133 TOKYO OF	OFFICE <u> 1000143 ARR</u> FACTORY	
FICE F	ACTORY	CISCO	FFICE	FICE		V

- Press [SUB Code].
- D Press [TX SUB Code].
- **5** Enter a SUB Code, and then press [OK].

I	🔾 Ready	Information
_		100%
Sector Street	≊&↔) \\$ 3 012345678_ Pro	gDest 1
	SUB Code Enter with the Number, *, #and space k	eys.
	Space	
	Cancel	ок

"SUB Code" appears one line above [Adv. Features] on the display.

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

1 To enter a password, press [Password (SID)].

Enter the password with the number keys, and then press [OK].

Press [Exit].

Press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

If you use Immediate Transmission and the fax machine at the destination does not support the SUB Code function, a message will appear on the display to inform you of this. When this happens, press [OK] to cancel the transmission.

SID Code

There are times when you may want to use an "SID" (Sender ID) when sending confidential faxes with the SUB Code function. When you use a Personal Box that has a password, enter the SID Code as the password.

Note 🖉

- □ The ID can be up to 20 digits long.
- □ You can enter numbers, *, #, and spaces to program an ID.
- You can store IDs in the destination list and Programs. See p.129 "Registering and Changing Keystroke Programs". See "Fax Destination", General Settings Guide.
- The SID Code is printed on all reports. This is possible only if the SID Code is specified in [Adv. Features] using the number keys.

SEP Code

Normally you can only use Polling Reception to receive faxes from machines that have the Polling Reception function and the same manufacturer. However, if a machine of another manufacturer supports Polling Reception, you can receive fax documents from the other party using this method instead.

You can receive documents that have the same SEP Code as the SEP Code you entered.

For details about the SEP Code, see p.181 "Box Settings".

Limitation

□ A SEP Code cannot be used with Internet Fax.

🖉 Note

- □ The ID can be up to 20 digits long.
- Make sure the number of digits in the ID matches the one set on the machine from which you are receiving.
- □ You can enter numbers, *, #, and spaces to program an ID.
- You can store IDs in the destination list and Programs. See "Fax Destination", General Settings Guide. See p.129 "Registering and Changing Keystroke Programs".
- The SEP Code is printed on all reports. This is possible only if the SEP Code is specified in [Adv. Features] using the number keys.

1 Enter the fax number of a destination or an IP-Fax destination.

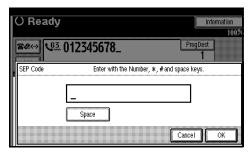
2 Press [Adv. Features].

O Ready							
·	nd specify des				ProqDest	100%	
bhá -			-	linni A	1		
	Registration N			eatures		8	
Freq. A	B CD E	F GH]]	UK LMN	OPQ RST	1000071	5	
ABC COMP ANY	BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	XYZ CO., LTD	New York OFFICE	1/2	
COODORI PARIS OF		COOD 102 SAN EBAN	SYDNEY 0	1000133 TOKYO OF	COOD141 ALL FACTORY		
FICE	FACTORY	CISCO	FFICE	FICE		T	

B Press [SEP Code].

Press [RX SEP Code].

Enter a SEP Code, and then press [OK].



"SEP Code" appears one line above **[Adv. Features]** on the display.

🖉 Note

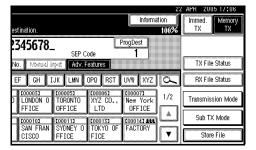
□ If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

To enter a password, press [Password (PWD)].

Enter the password using the number keys, and then press [OK].

8 Press [Exit].

9 Press [Transmission Mode].



Press [Polling RX].

Press [Default ID / Free Polling RX], and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

To cancel Polling RX, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step [].

Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

Press the [Start] key.

PWD Code

There are times you may want to use a password when receiving faxes by polling using the SEP Code function. If you receive a document from a machine of the same manufacturer, the password does not have to be entered.

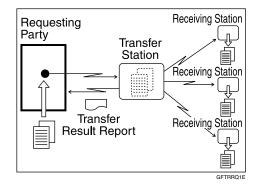
🖉 Note

- The password can be up to 20 digits long.
- □ You can enter numbers, *, #, and spaces as a password.
- You can store IDs in the destination list and Programs. See "Fax Destination", General Settings Guide. See p.129 "Registering and Changing Keystroke Programs".
- The PWD Code is printed on all reports. This is possible only if the PWD Code is specified in [Adv. Features] using the number keys.

Transfer Request

Transfer Request allows fax machines that have this function to automatically transfer incoming documents to multiple fax destinations. This function helps you save costs when you send the same document to more than one place in a distant area, and saves time since many documents can be sent in a single operation.

The following diagram may make the concept clearer.



The following terminologies are used in this section:

Requesting Party

The machine where the document originates.

Transfer Station

The machine that forwards the incoming document to another destination.

Receiving Station

The facsimile or computer that received the document from the Transfer Station.

Preparation

Before you can use this function, you must make the following preparations:

- Program each Transfer Station number in this machine (Requesting Party) and in the Transfer Station itself. See p.192 "Transfer Report".
- Program the same Polling ID in both this machine (Requesting Party) and the Transfer Station. See p.193 "Programming a Polling ID".
- To send a Transfer Request by fax, the Transfer Station must be a fax machine of the same manufacturer and have the Transfer Station function.
- To send a Transfer Request by email, the Transfer Station must be a fax machine of the same manufacturer that supports Internet Fax.
- To send a Transfer Request by IP-Fax, the Transfer Station must be a fax machine that supports IP-Fax and be made by the same manufacturer.
- The Requesting Party's fax number must be programmed in the Transfer Station's Quick Dial or Speed Dial.
- The Receiving Station's fax number must be programmed in the Transfer Station's Quick Dial, Speed Dial or Group Dial.

Note 🖉

- □ You can specify up to 500 Transfer Stations in a Transfer Request.
- □ You can have up to 30 End Receivers per Transfer Station. If you specify a Transfer Station's Group, the Group counts as a single receiver.
- When a Transfer Request is sent by e-mail, as soon as the Transfer Station completes transfer to all Receiving Stations, it sends back a Transfer Result Report by e-mail. See p.89 "Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)".
- When a Transfer Request is sent by e-mail to a computer or facsimile without the Transfer Request function, that machine receives it as ordinary e-mail. It does not transfer the document nor send an error report back to the Requesting Party. To send Transfer Request by e-mail, use a Transfer Station that supports Internet Fax and has the Transfer Station function.
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **B**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Place the original, and then select any scan settings you require.

🖉 Note

□ When using a Transfer Request by e-mail, documents are sent at "Detail" resolution, even if you have specified "Super Fine". To send a document at "Super Fine", configure the Full Mode when registering the destinations in the Address Book. See p.57 "T.37 Full Mode", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*. □ When using a Transfer Request by e-mail, originals are sent at A4 width. Originals larger than A4 are reduced to A4 width. If the receiver is in compliance with the T.37 full mode, originals are sent at the width specified in the Address Book. See p.57 "T.37 Full Mode", *Facsimile Reference* <*Basic Features*>.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Specify a Transfer Station.

🖉 Note

- Enter directly or use a destination list to specify the fax number, email address, or IP-Fax destination of the Transfer Station.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.
- When a Transfer Request is sent by e-mail, e-mail options can be set. See steps 2 and 3 on p.59 "Sending Internet Fax Documents", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

PReference

p.35 "Entering a Fax Number", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.37 "Entering an E-mail Address", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.38 "Entering an IP-Fax Destination", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*

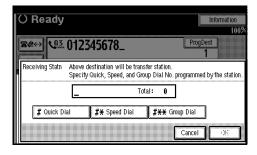
p.41 "Using the Destination List to Specify Single or Group Destinations", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*

B Press [Adv. Features].

		tination			Informa	
8 &↔ (Set original and specify destination.					
Add	Registration No). Estimate	nçert 🛛 Adv. F	'eatures		
Freq. A	3 CD E		UK LMN	OPQ RST	UYW XYZ	
ABC COMP ANY	BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	XYZ CO., LTD	1000071 New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOB1 PARIS OF	LOOOO91 DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	E000113 SYDNEY O FEICE	E000133 TOKYO OF FICE	1000141 418 FACTORY	

- Press [Transfer Req.].
- Press [Receiving Statn].

5 Specify a Receiving Station.



🖉 Note

- You cannot enter Receiving Station numbers directly. The numbers must be stored in destination lists, Speed Dial, or Groups in the Transfer Station(s). To specify a Receiving Station, use the following procedure.
- □ To cancel the Transfer Request, press **[Cancel]** twice. The display returns to that of step **5**.

Destination List

Select [# Quick Dial].

Enter the registration number of the destination list where the Receiving Station is stored.

For example, to select the registration number stored in Quick Dial 01 of the Transfer Station, enter: **[0][1]**.

🖉 Note

□ You can enter up to five digits.

Speed Dial

● Select [#★ Speed Dial].

2 Enter the number of the Speed Dial code.

For example, to select the number stored in Speed Dial 12 of the Transfer Station, enter: [1][2].

Group Dial

• Select [$\# \times \times$ Group Dial].

2 Enter the number of the Group number.

For example, to select the number stored in Group Dial 04 of the Transfer Station, enter: **[0][4]**.

1 To specify another Receiving Station, press [Add].

🖉 Note

□ Press [▲Prev.] or [▼Next] to see the Receiving Stations already entered. You can select a Receiving Station from this list and remove it by pressing [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key.

When you have specified all the Receiving Stations, press [OK].

9 Press [Exit].



The Transfer Stations and Receiving Stations are displayed.

Press the [Start] key.

With transfer requests set in the System Settings menu

You can program a Destination key with Transfer Station and/or Receiving Station under Program/Change/Delete Transfer Request in the System Settings menu. See "Registering the Transfer Request", *General Settings Guide*.

1 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press the key programmed with Transfer Request.

O Rea Set original a	dy nd specify des	tination.			Informa	ation
8 ¢⇔ (<u></u>		nout 🛛 Adv. F	To		
Freq. A	Registration Ni B CD E	D. Etanual I F GH I	IJK LMN	ociarec OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	
COODO 13 ABC COMP ANY	C000021 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	<u>COOCO73</u> New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOBI PARIS OF FICE	LOODO93 DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD113 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>1000131+⊕</u> Finland	1000141 211 FACTORY	

Press the [Start] key.

•

Setting Multistep Transfer

Program a Transfer Station in a destination list. When receiving a Transfer Request that specifies the same Receiving Station as programmed in the destination list, this machine sends a Transfer Request to the programmed Transfer Station. This function allows fax documents to be transferred via multiple stations and makes fax document transfer more efficient.

You can program up to 30 Receiving Stations per Transfer Station. For more information, contact your service representative.

On Hook Dial

The On Hook Dial function allows you to dial while listening to the tone from the internal speaker. You can send a fax checking the connection.

Limitation

This function is not available for the optional extra G3 interface unit, Internet Fax and IP-Fax.

🖉 Note

- This function is unavailable in some countries.
- If an Immediate TX Result Report (Immediate Transmission) is printed, On Hook Dial transmission results are not mentioned on the report.

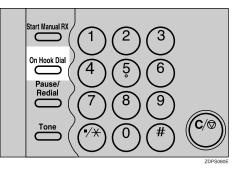
Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

Press the [On Hook Dial] key.



You will hear a low tone from the internal speaker.

🖉 Note

□ If you want to cancel this operation, press the **[On Hook Dial]** key again.

3 Dial.

O Rea Start fax trans	mission after	you hear high	pitched tone.		វេរាំវិភាជ	d lan
	esister i lon Na).	nove Adv.	Facilities	tal: 0	
Freq. AE	COODO21 BERLIN O	LONDON O	IJK LMN	0PQ RST <u>coooog</u> XYZ CO.,	UVW XYZ COOCC73 New York	<u>مہ</u> 1/2
ANY <u> COODO81</u> PARIS OF FICE	FFICE COODO93 DETROIT FACTORY	FFICE COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	OFFICE COOO113 SYDNEY O FFICE	LTD <u> COOO133</u> TOKYO OF FICE	OFFICE	▼

The machine immediately dials the destination.

🖉 Note

- □ You can adjust the volume of the on-hook sound by pressing [Higher] or [Lower] in the upper right-hand corner of the display. The volume can also be preprogrammed in "Gen. Settings/ Adjust". See p.87 "Adjusting the Volume", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>* and p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[On Hook Dial]** or **[Clear Modes]** key, and then return to step **2**.
- 4 When the line is connected and you hear a high-pitched tone, press the [Start] key.

The transmission starts.

- 🖉 Note
- □ After transmission, the machine returns to standby mode.
- □ If you want to cancel a transmission, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key, and then remove the originals.

External Telephone On Hook

.

If you have an external telephone on the fax machine, you can speak with the other party when you hear a voice. If you hear a voice before pressing the **[Start]** key, pick up the external telephone and tell the receiver you want to send a fax document (ask them to switch to facsimile mode).

•••••

Manual Dial

The external telephone is required.

Pick up the handset of the external telephone and dial. When the line is connected and you hear a high-pitched tone, press the **[Start]** key to send your fax document. If, on the other hand, you hear a voice at the other end, continue conversation as normal.

Limitation

- This function is not available for the optional extra G3 interface unit, Internet Fax and IP-Fax.
- If Immediate TX Result Report (Immediate Transmission) is printed, the result of a transmission with Manual Dial is not mentioned in the report.

Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Pick up the handset.

You will hear a dial tone.

3 Dial.

OUsing Start fax trans			pitched tone.		htens	1 on 1009
	-				(al: 0	
Freq. AE	iegistration N		oput Adiv. F		UYW XYZ	
COODO 13 ABC COMP ANY	E000023 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0	LOODOSI TORONTO OFFICE	<u>C000061</u> XYZ CO., LTD	COODO71 New York OFFICE	1/2
COODOSI PARIS OF	COOOO93 DETROIT FACTORY	E000103 SAN FRAN	COODIII SYDNEY O	1000133 TOKYO OF	FACTORY	

The machine immediately dials the destination.

🖉 Note

- If you make a mistake, replace the external telephone, and then try again from step 2.
- When the line is connected and you hear a high-pitched tone, press the [Start] key to send your fax document.

The transmission starts.

🖉 Note

If you hear a voice, tell the receiver that you want to send them a fax document (ask them to switch to facsimile mode).

E Replace the handset.

After transmission, the standby display appears.

🖉 Note

□ If you want to cancel a transmission, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key, and then remove the originals.

Changing the Line Port

The optional extra G3 interface unit is required.

When the extra G3 interface unit is installed, you can connect to a maximum of three ports.

🖉 Note

- When you install the extra G3 interface unit, you can specify the line port home position from "Gen. Settings/ Adjust". See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- When sending a fax, you can select the line port if dialing with the number keys or Chain Dial.

✤ G3

G3 is selected after power up or when the machine is reset. If you install the extra G3 interface unit, you can select "G3-1", "G3-2", "G3-3", or "G3 Auto" depending on the number of the installed unit.

	O Ready Set original and specify destination.						
	<u>63</u> * _				.a 0		
Freq. AB	Registration Ni B CD E		ngat Adv. i IJK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	م	
ABC COMP ANY	1000021 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	1000051 TORONTO OFFICE	<u>1000061</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2	
COODED PARIS OF FICE	DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDJ SAN FRAN CISCO	COOO113 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>0000133</u> TOKYO OF FICE	COOD 143 ALL FACTORY	L.	

Multi-port

When the extra G3 interface unit is installed, communications can take place simultaneously through three lines at once.

The following list shows protocol combinations available for each line type.

Option	Available line types	Available protocol combinations
Without option	PSTN	G3
Extra G3 interface unit	PSTN+ PSTN	G3+G3
Extra G3 interface unit + Extra G3 interface unit	PSTN + PSTN + PSTN	G3 + G3 + G3

🖉 Note

- A maximum of three simultaneous communications are possible. You cannot perform three Immediate Transmissions simultaneously.
- If three communications are in progress, the display shows the first communication that was initiated

Press [Select Line].

O Rea Set original a	i dy nd specify des	tination.			Informa	ation
8 ¢↔ (G3 * _). 🛛 Manual I	npid 🛛 Adv. F		0 lect Line	
Freq. A	B CD E	F GH I	IJK LMN	0PQ RST	UVW XYZ	<u>م</u> 1/2
ANY PARIS OF FICE	FFICE	FFICE SAN FRAN CISCO	OFFICE	LTD 1000133 TOKYO OF FICE	OFFICE	*

2 Select the line you want to use.

When one optional extra G3 unit is installed.

O Re Set origina	ady Land specify destina	ation.		l Inf	ormation 100%
B¢ (~)	¥ ^{43*} _		1	Total: 0	
Select line	negisuarion no.	i Asnual Inp.t.	Adv. Feedures	Select Line	
G3-	1 G3-2	G3 A	uto		
					Exit

🖉 Note

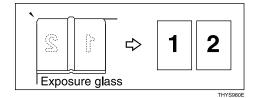
□ If you select "G3 Auto", the machine will use any available line. This increases efficiency.

3 Press [Exit].

Sub Transmission Mode

Book Fax

Use to send book originals from the exposure glass. Pages are scanned in the following order.



Limitation

- Place the original on the exposure glass. You cannot use the optional ADF.
- Depending on paper sizes available in the destination machine, the document may be reduced when printed at the other end.

🖉 Note

- You can have bound originals scanned as left or right page first. You can set which page (left or right) the machine scans first as default with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 06, bit 6).
- When using the Internet Fax function, originals are sent at A4 width. Originals larger than A4 are reduced to A4 width. See p.11 "Placing Originals", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*. If the receiver is T.37 full mode compliant, originals are sent at the width specified in the Address Book. See p.57 "T.37 Full Mode", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Place the original on the exposure glass, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

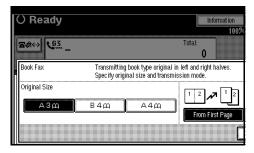
p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Sub TX Mode].

			22	APK 200517:29
estination.		Informa	tion 100%	Immed. Memory TX TX
	To	tal: O		
No. Manual input 🛛 Adi	: Fasiunes			TX File Status
EF GH IJK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	<u>0</u> -	RX File Status
C000033 C000053 D LONDON 0 TORONTO FEICE OFFICE	XYZ CO.,	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
[C00010] [C00011]	LIU (000133	00014344	L.	Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN SYDNEY CISCO FFICE	O TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼	Store File

B Press [Book Fax].

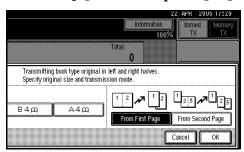
Select the size of the original.



🖉 Note

- □ To cancel this mode, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step [3.
- If you select A3, the original will be sent using Image Rotation Transmission. See p.79 "Transmission with Image Rotation".

Select [From First Page] or [From Second Page], and then press [OK].



The selected original size is shown above the highlighted **[Book Fax]**.

🖉 Note

- Select [From First Page] to send a book original from the first page.
- Select [From Second Page] if you want to send a cover letter as the first page.
- □ To cancel this mode, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 3.

6 Press [OK].

Specify a destination, and then press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

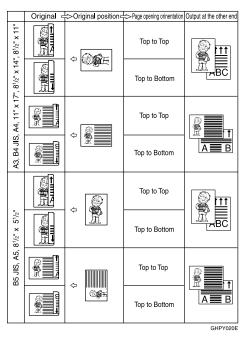
- When sending more than one page, place the originals individually, one after the other, pressing the [Start] key after each page.
- □ After scanning the last original, press [⑦].
- □ If [⑦] is not pressed, the machine will automatically start sending the documents, 60 seconds after the last original has been scanned.

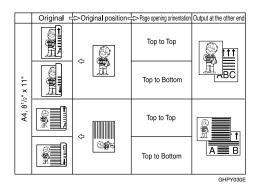
Two-Sided Transmission (Double-Sided Transmission)

The optional ADF is required.

Use this function to send two-sided originals.

- □ Originals placed on the exposure glass cannot be sent.
- The front and back of the scanned original will be printed in order on separate sheets at the other end. The orientation of alternate sheets may be reversed at the other end. If you want to print the original with the same orientation at the other end, specify the "Original Position" and "Page Opening Orientation".





See p.79 "Transmission with Image Rotation"

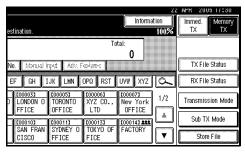
- This function is only available with Memory Transmission.
- This function is only available with the ADF.
- You can confirm whether both sides were properly scanned using the Stamp function. See p.73 "Stamp".
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the quick operation keys allows you to omit step
 See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- **1** Place the original in the ADF, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

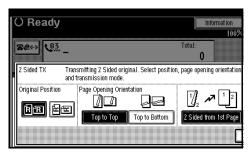
2 Press [Sub TX Mode].



B Press [2 Sided Original].

4 Specify the original position.

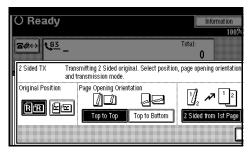
Check the orientation of the placed document, and then press **Per** or **Per**.



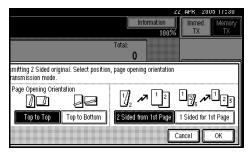
🖉 Note

Make sure that the specified original position matches the orientation of originals loaded in the ADF.

• Specify the page opening orientation from [Top to Top] or [Top to Bottom].



Specify the transmission mode from [2 Sided from 1st Page] or [1 Sided for 1st Page], and then press [OK].



The selected original position and page opening orientation are shown above the highlighted **[2 Sided Orig-inal]**.

🔗 Note

- □ To cancel this mode, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 3.
- □ Select **[2 Sided from 1st Page]** to send a two-sided original from the first page.
- Select [1 Sided for 1st Page] if you want to send a cover letter as the first page.

7 Press [OK].

Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

Standard Message Stamp

Use this function to stamp a standard message at the top of the first original sent.

There are four types of standard messages: "Confidential", "Urgent", "Please phone.", and "Copy to corres. section"

You can also program other messages.

🖉 Note

- While this function is in use, the third line of the Label Insertion is not printed. See p.74 "Label Insertion".
- □ When there is an image around the area where the standard message is to be stamped, that image is deleted.
- To program a standard message, use the Program / Change / Delete Standard Message function. See p.157 "Programming, Changing, and Deleting Standard Messages".

Place the originals, and then select the scan settings you require.

✓ Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

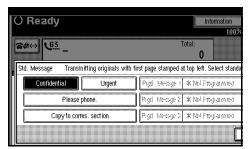
p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

Press [Sub TX Mode].

				22	: APK	2005 17:30
estination.			Informa		Imm T>	ed. Memory TX
		To	tal: O			
No. Monual inp	ia Adv. P	odures 👘				(File Status
EF GH IJ	K LMN (OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6	R	(File Status
D LONDON O	TORONTO	<u>0000063</u> XYZ CO.,	<u>0000071</u> New York	1/2	Tran	smission Mode
	OFFICE	LID 2000133	UFFICE [00014] ###	à	S	ub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼		Store File

Press [Std. Message].

Select the standard message to be stamped, and then press [OK].



The selected standard message is shown above the highlighted **[Std. Message]**.

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel the selection, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **§**.
- Programmed standard messages are shown in the keys.
- □ The machine cannot stamp multiple standard messages.

D Press [OK].

Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

Sending an Auto Document

If you often send a particular page to people (for example a map, a standard attachment, or a set of instructions), store that page in memory as an Auto Document. This saves rescanning every time you want to send it.

You can fax an Auto Document by itself, or attach it to a standard fax document.

Preparation

You need to register an Auto Document. See p.158 "Storing, Changing, and Deleting an Auto Document".

🖉 Note

- You can attach one Auto Document to each transmission.
- ☐ You can store up to 6 Auto Documents. See p.158 "Storing, Changing, and Deleting an Auto Document".
- □ Files with Auto Documents are sent by Memory Transmission.
- When sending an Auto Document with other files, the Auto Document is sent first.
- Storing Auto Documents reduces the amount of free memory slightly. Unless you delete the document, free memory will not return to 100%.
- You can print an Auto Document currently stored in memory. See p.67 "Printing documents stored as Auto Documents".
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the Quick Operation keys allows you to omit step 2. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- **1** Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

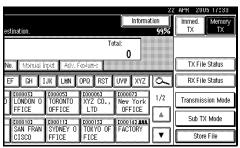
p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

🖉 Note

When you fax an Auto Document, start from step 2.

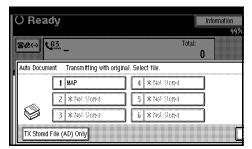
Press [Sub TX Mode].



Press [Auto Document].

Select an Auto Document file, and then press [OK].

When you fax an Auto Document by itself, press **[TX Stored File (AD) Only]**, and then press **[OK]**.



The selected file name is shown above the highlighted **[Auto Document]**.

🔗 Note

- Programmed Auto Documents are shown in the keys.
- To cancel the Auto Document, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step].

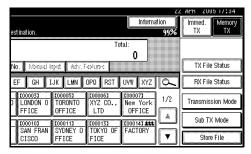
5 Press [OK].

Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

Printing documents stored as Auto Documents

This function is used for printing documents stored as Auto Documents. This function is very convenient as it can be used for checking the contents of stored files.

Press [Sub TX Mode].



2 Press [Auto Document].

Select an Auto Document file to be printed, and then press [Print File].

() Rea	dy	Information 99%
8 %~) (<u>63</u> _	Total: O
Auto Docum	nent Transmitting with orig	inal. Select file.
	1 MAP	& X Noi Sioned
	2 × Nol Stored	5 × Nol Hored
	3 × Nol Stored	6 × Noi Stored
TX Stored	File (AD) Only	

🖉 Note

To cancel the Auto Document, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 2.

Press the [Start] key.

Once printing is completed, the display returns to that of step **B**.

🖉 Note

□ To cancel printing after pressing the [Start] key, press [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step].

5 Press [Cancel].

🖉 Note

☐ You can also send Auto Documents. See p.66 "Sending an Auto Document".

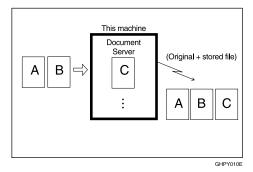
6 Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

Sending a Stored File

Use this function to send documents stored in the Document Server. You can specify and send multiple documents, and also send them with scanned originals all at once.

You can also print stored originals with **[Print File]**. See p.70 "Printing stored documents".



Preparation

Store the documents to be sent in advance. You can program a password for this function. You can change the user names, file names, and passwords of stored documents. See p.133 "Using the Document Server", and p.136 "Changing Stored Document Information".

🖉 Note

- Received fax documents are stored and categorized as stored received files. See p.34 "Printing/Deleting Received and Stored Documents (Print/Delete Stored RX File)".
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the Quick Operation keys allows you to omit step
 See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Sending stored documents

The machine sends documents stored in the Document Server.

The documents stored in the Document Server can be sent again and again until they are deleted. Once sent, documents are stored in the Document Server. Therefore, you can send them in just one operation without having to set your originals again.

Limitation

□ You cannot use the following transmission methods:

- Free Polling Transmission
- Default ID Transmission
- ID Override Transmission
- Immediate Transmission
- Parallel Memory Transmission
- On Hook Dial
- Manual Dial

- You can send only documents saved with the facsimile function in the Document Server. You cannot send documents saved in the copy, printer, or scanner function.
- You can specify and print multiple documents. You can specify a maximum of 30 documents at once.

- □ The machine can send a total of 1,000 pages in one operation.
- The specified documents are sent with the scan settings made when they were stored.

Press [Sub TX Mode].

			Informa		APR 2005 17:36
estination.		To	tal:	99%	
No. Manual I	yat 🛛 Adv. F	adure:	0		TX File Status
EF GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	6	RX File Status
0000033 LONDON 0	TORONTO	XYZ CO.,	LOODO73 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
1000103	000111	1000133	0000143 #88		Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY U FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	V	Store File

2 Press [Select Stored File].

B Select the documents to be sent.

	Select file to transmit, then press [OK].							
		L l	Jser Name	File Nar	ne Date	Page	Ĭ:	((nder
	10	New \	ork OFFICE	FAX0009	22 Apr.	1		
Ę	6	BERLI	N OFFICE	FAX0008	22Apr.	1		1/1
		LONDO	N OFFICE	FAX0007	22 Apr.	1		🛦 Frev.
								₩ Net
ly	Ľ] Origi.	+ Stored File	Stored file +	🖞 Origi. 📘 🛛 I	vlanage / ()elete	File

🖉 Note

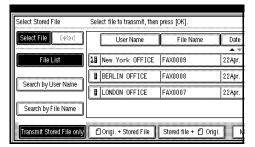
- When multiple documents are selected, they are sent in the order of selection.
- □ Press **[TX Order]** to arrange the order of the documents to be sent.
- Press [File Name] to place the documents in alphabetical order.
- Press [User Name] to place the documents in order by programmed user name.
- □ Press **[Date]** to place the documents in order of programmed date.

Specifying documents from the file list

- Press [▲ Prev.] or [▼Next] to display the documents to be sent.
- **2** Select the file.

Specifying documents by User Name

Select [Search by User Name].



Select the user name of the programmed document, and then press [OK].

Search User Name			Clea
Freq. A	B CD EF	GH IJK	LMN
ABC COMPANY	BERLIN OFFICE	LONDON OFFICE	NEW YORK
XYZ CO., LTD	New York OFFICE	PARIS OFFICE	DETROIT
SYDNEY OFFICE	LOS ANGELES FACT	TOKYO OFFICE	FAC1
ABC NET	Jones	Finland	
Switch Title			

🔗 Note

To search by directly entering a user name, press [Nonprogrammed Name], and then enter the user name. Partial matching is used when searching for a user name. See p.173 "Using Partial matching".

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

3 Select the file to be sent.

Specifying documents by file name

• Select [Search by File Name].

Select Stored File Select file to transmit, then press [OK].						
Select File (reise)	User Name	File Name	Date			
	(A W			
File List	1 New York OFFICE	FAX0009	22Apr.			
			Leei			
Count buildow Marco	BERLIN OFFICE	FAX0008	22Apr.			
Search by User Name	LONDON OFFICE	FAX0007	22Apr.			
Search by File Name						
G	L					
Transmit Stored File only	🖞 Origi. + Stored File	Stored file + 🖞 Origi.][

2 Enter the name of the document to be sent, and then press [OK].

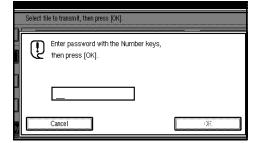
3	4 5 6	7 8	9 0 -
е	r t y	u i	0 P
Ь	f g h	j k	
×	c v b		, <u>,</u> [/
	Space		
Shift			

🖉 Note

Partial matching is used when searching for a file name.

3 Select the file to be sent.

4 If you select a document with a password, enter the password, and then press [OK].



If the document does not have a password, proceed to step **5**.

U When you want to add your originals to stored documents and send them all at once, press [☐ Origi. + Stored File] or [Stored file + ☐ Origi.].

	User Name	File Name	Date	Page	TX Order
6	- 1		• •		
12	New York OFFICE	FAX0009	22Apr.	1	
	BERLIN OFFICE	FAX0008	22Apr.	1	1 1/1
	LONDON OFFICE	FAX0007	22Apr.	1	▲ Fre
[T Y Ne

When sending only stored documents, proceed to step **5**.

🖉 Note

- □ When [☐ Origi. + Stored File] is pressed, the machine sends the originals, and then stored files. When [Stored file + ☐ Origi.] is pressed, the machine sends the stored files, and then originals.
- □ The added originals are not stored.
- **6** Press [**0K**] twice.

🖉 Note

- To add an original to stored documents, place the original, and then select any scan settings you require.
- Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

Printing stored documents

Use this function to print documents stored in the Document Server.

- Only documents stored using the facsimile function can be printed.
- You can also print the first page only to check the content of the original.
- □ You can specify and print multiple documents, a maximum of 30 documents at one time.

Press [Sub TX Mode].

		22	2 APR 2005 17:49
estination.	Informa	tion 99%	Immed. Memory TX TX
	Total: O		
No. Manual Input Adv.	Facilities		TX File Status
EF GH IJK LMN	OPQ RST UVW XYZ	6	RX File Status
0000033 000053 D LONDON 0 TORONTO FFICE 0FFICE	1000061 1000073 XYZ CO., New York LTD 0FFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
[0000102 [0000112	[00013] [00014] ##		Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN SYDNEY O CISCO FFICE	TOKYO OF FACTORY FICE	▼	Store File

2 Press [Select Stored File].

Select the document to be printed.

	Select file to transmit, the	n press [OK].			
: 	User Name	File Name	Date Pa	age To	((ader
			A W		
3	1 New York OFFICE	FAX0009	22Apr.	1	
g	BERLIN OFFICE	FAX0008	22Apr.	1	1/1
J	LONDON OFFICE	FAX0007	22Apr.	1	🛦 Prev.
Ęŝ					¥ Net
ly	🖞 Origi. + Stored File	Stored file + 🖞 C	rigi. Manag	e / Delete	File

🖉 Note

- The documents stored using the facsimile function appear on the display.
- Press [File Name] to place the documents in alphabetical order.
- Press [User Name] to place documents in order of programmed user name.
- Press [Date] to place the documents in order by the programmed date.
- □ To see details of the selected document, press [Detail]. To return to the display in step [], press [Select File].

	If two or more files File Name FAX0008 User Name BERLIN OFFIC Storage Time 22/Apr/2005	CE	•	be trans Storage Ø Facs	Method	gether.			
	≥ 27 Apr./ 2005 ► Size *****	► Pages							
]			ΤX	order:	1/1		à		¥
ly	🖞 Origi. + Store	d File	Stored file +	🖞 Oriç	ji.	parete	₽7Del	do File	

Selecting a document from file list

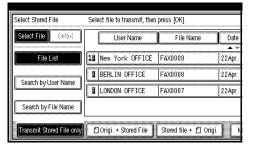
Select the file.

🖉 Note

□ Press [▲Prev.] or [▼Next] to display the document to be sent.

Specifying a document from the User Name

Select [Search by User Name].



Press the user name of the document to be sent, and then press [OK].

Search User Name			Cle
Freq. AB	3 CD EF	GH IJK	LMN
ABC COMPANY	BERLIN OFFICE	LONDON OFFICE	NEW YORK
XYZ CO., LTD	New York OFFICE	PARIS OFFICE	DETROIT
SYDNEY OFFICE	LOS ANGELES FACT	TOKYO OFFICE	FAC1
ABC NET	Jones	Finland	
Switch Title			

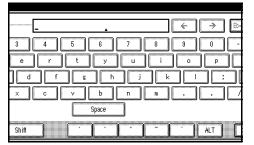
- □ To search by directly entering a user name, press **[Non-programmed Name]**, and then enter the user name.
- **3** Select the file.

Specifying a document from the file name

Press [Search by File Name].

Select Stored File	Select file to transmit, then press [OK].			
Select File	User Name File	Name Date		
File List	I New York OFFICE FAX0009	22 Apr.		
Search by User Name	BERLIN OFFICE FAX0008	22Apr.		
	LONDON OFFICE FAX0007	22Apr.		
Search by File Name	<u></u>			
Transmit Stored File only	🖞 Origi. + Stored File 📗 Stored file	+ 🖞 Origi. 👘 N		

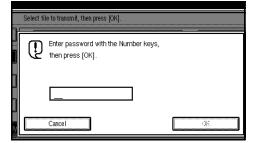
2 Enter the file name to be printed, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

- Partial matching is used to search for the file name.
- **3** Select the file.

4 If you select a document with a password, enter the password, and then press [OK].



If the document does not have a password, proceed to step **5**.

5 Press [Print File] or [Print 1st Page].

When **[Print File]** is pressed, the machine prints all the pages. When **[Print 1st Page]** is pressed, the machine prints only the first page.

Limitation

- When [Print 1st Page] is selected, originals larger than A4 size are printed after they are reduced to A4 size.
- The machine can print up to 30 files using the Print 1st Page function.

🖉 Note

- □ To print both sides, press [Print 2 Sides].
- □ To cancel printing, press [Cancel].
- **6** Press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

- When only the first page is printed, the file name is printed at the top of the paper.
- To cancel printing after pressing the [Start] key, press [Stop Printing].

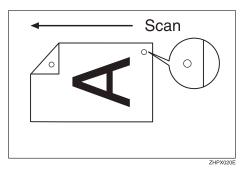
Press [OK] twice.

The standby display appears.

Stamp

The optional ADF is required.

When sending a fax document using the ADF, the machine can stamp a circle mark at the bottom of the original. When sending a two-sided document, the document is marked at the bottom of the front page and top of the rear page. This stamp indicates that the original has been successfully stored in memory for Memory Transmission, or successfully sent by Immediate Transmission.



🔗 Note

- □ Stamp only works when scanning from the ADF.
- When the stamp starts getting lighter, replace the cartridge. See "Replacing the Stamp Cartridge", General Settings Guide.
- If a page was not stamped even though the Stamp function is turned on, you need to resend that page.
- If you use this function often, you can set the default in General Settings and Adjustment so that this function is always on. In this case, Stamp can easily be turned off for any single transmission by pressing [Stamp]. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

- A paper jam during Parallel Memory Transmission may cause the transmission to fail even if stamping is performed.
- You cannot turn the Stamp function on or off while an original is being scanned.

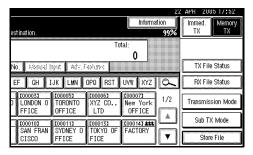
1 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

PReference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

2 Press [Sub TX Mode].



B Press [Stamp], and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel the stamp, press [Stamp] again before pressing [OK].
- Specify the destination, and then press the [Start] key.

Transmission Options

This section describes various functions that you can switch on and off for any particular transmission, following the procedures given here.

In addition, if you frequently use a certain option configuration, you can change the default home position (on or off) of each option.

Fax Header Print

In some cases, you may want the other party to receive an unmarked copy of your original. To do this, switch Fax Header off.

When the Fax Header is set to "On", the stored name is printed on the receiver's paper.

You can store two Fax Headers; "First Name" and "Second Name".

For example, if you store your department name in one and your organization name in the other, you could use the first when sending internal faxes and the second for external faxes.

🖉 Note

- If you used the number keys to specify the receiver, the first header name is printed on the receiver's paper. To print the second header name, contact your service representative.
- You can program fax header names using the Program Fax Information function.
- You can select whether or not dates, fax header names, file numbers, or page numbers are printed by changing their respective User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 18, bit 3, 2, 1, 0).
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Label Insertion

With this function you can have the receiver's name printed on the document that is received at the other end.

The receiver's name is printed as follows:

- Receiver's name: printed at the top of the page and preceded by "To:".
- Standard message: the programmed message is printed within the next two lines.

Set this function as follows:

- Set Label Insertion to **[On]** when programming fax destinations.
- Select **[Programmed Name]** for Label Insertion when sending fax documents.
- On the Std. Message screen, select the standard message you want to print.

Limitation

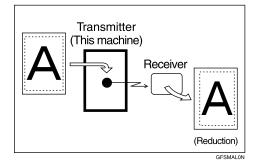
- To use this function, set Label Insertion to [On] when programming fax destinations and also select [Programmed Name] when sending fax documents.
- When there is an image around the area where the Label is to be printed, that image is deleted.

Note 🖉

- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- To print a standard message that is not programmed as a default, program it on this machine in advance. See p.157 "Programming, Changing, and Deleting Standard Messages".

Reduced Image Transmission

Using this function, your document is sent at a reduced size (93%) with a blank margin on the left.

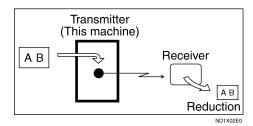


🖉 Note

- This function is unavailable with Immediate Transmission, or specified transmission of a stored document.
- Image Rotation is unavailable with this function.

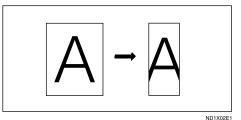
Auto Reduce

When this function is turned on, if the receiver's paper is smaller than the size of the original you are sending, the document is automatically reduced to fit onto the paper available at the other end.



∰Important

□ If you turn this function off, the scale of the original is maintained and some parts of the image may be deleted when printed at the other end.



Default ID Transmission

If you turn this function on, transmission will only take place if the destination's Polling ID is the same as yours. This function can stop you accidentally sending information to the wrong place.

Preparation

You need to register a Polling ID beforehand. See p.193 "Programming a Polling ID".

Limitation

This function is not available with Internet Fax.

🖉 Note

You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Selecting transmission options for a single transmission

Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

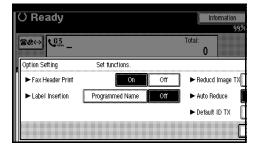
p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

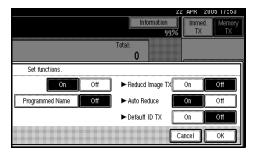
2 Press [Sub TX Mode].

			22	: APR Z	00517:58
estination.		Informati		Immed TX	Memory TX
	To	tal 🛛 📖			
No. Manual input 🛛 A	dy. Fastures			TX F	ile Status
EF GH IJK LM	N OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	<u>0</u> ,	RX F	ile Status
2000033 2000053 D LONDON 0 TORONT FEICE 0FFICE	TO XYZ CO.,	LOODO73 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transm	ission Mode
[0000103] [0000113	0000133	[00014] #88	<u></u>	Sub	TX Mode
SAN FRAN SYDNEY CISCO FFICE	O TOKYO OF	FACTORY	¥	St	ore File

B Select [Options].

4 Select options to be set up.





🖉 Note

- □ To close the option settings, proceed to step **5**.
- □ To cancel the option settings, press [Cancel].

Programming the Fax Header Print

1 Press [On] for Fax Header Print.

🖉 Note

□ Press **[Off]** if you do not want to print the sender name.

Programming the Label Insertion

Press [Programmed Name] for Label Insertion.

🔗 Note

□ Press **[Off]** if you do not want to insert a destination.

Programming the Reduced Image Transmission

Press [On] in for Reduced Image TX.

🖉 Note

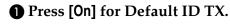
□ Press **[Off]** if you do not want to do a reduced transmission.

Programming the Auto Reduce

Press [On] for Auto Reduce.

🖉 Note

Press [Off] if you do not want to use the Auto Reduce function. Programming the Default ID Transmission



🖉 Note

□ Press **[Off]** if you do not want to use ID transmission.

5 Press [OK] twice.

6 Specify the destination, and then press the **[Start]** key.

More Transmission Functions

If Memory Runs Out While Storing an Original

If you run out of memory while storing an original (free space reaches 0%), the message "Memory is full. Cannot scan more. Transmitting only scanned pages." is displayed.

Press **[Exit]** to transmit stored pages only.

🖉 Note

When this happens, only the scanned pages are sent. If you want to delete the scanned pages and cancel transmission in this case, contact your service representative.

Parallel Memory Transmission

This function dials while the original is being scanned. Standard Memory Transmission stores the original in memory, then dials the destination. Parallel Memory Transmission allows you to quickly determine whether a connection was made. In addition, this function scans the original faster than Immediate Transmission. This is useful when you are in a hurry and need to use the original for another purpose.

Limitation

- Standard Memory Transmission is used instead of Parallel Memory Transmission in the following cases:
 - When the line is busy and could not be connected to
 - With Send Later
 - When you store an original for Memory Transmission while another communication is in progress
 - When two or more destinations are specified
 - When you send only an Auto Document
 - When an original is placed on the exposure glass, and then sent
 - When you send documents stored in the Document Server

- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 07, bit 2).
- Standard Memory Transmission may be used instead of Parallel Memory Transmission depending on the optional equipment installed if there is not enough free memory left.
- □ If you use this function, the Memory Storage Report will not be printed.
- □ If the **[Clear/Stop]** key is pressed, the original will jam or memory will run out while Parallel Memory Transmission stops. The Communication Result Report is printed and files are deleted.
- When using Parallel Memory Transmission, only the original pages are printed without automatically printing the total number of originals in "Fax Header Print".

Automatic Redial

If a fax document could not be sent because the line was busy or an error occurred during transmission, the line is switched to another at five-minute intervals and redial is attempted up to five times.

If redialing fails after four redials, the machine cancels the transmission and prints a Communication Result Report or Communication Failure Report. See p.82 "Communication Failure Report" and p.28 "Communication Result Report (Memory Transmission)", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Batch Transmission

If you send a fax document by Memory Transmission and there is another fax document waiting in memory to be sent to the same destination, that document is sent along with your original. Several fax documents can be sent with a single call, thus eliminating the need for several separate calls. This helps save communication costs and reduce transmission time.

Fax documents whose transmission time was set in advance are sent by batch transmission when that time is reached.

Limitation

This function is not available with Internet Fax and IP-Fax.

🖉 Note

- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 14, bit 2).
- □ The originals to be transmitted at a specific time is sent at that time.
- If fax memory is overloaded, documents may not be sent in the order they were scanned.

Dual Access

The machine can scan other documents into memory even while sending a fax document from memory, receiving a document into memory, or automatically printing a report. Since the machine starts sending the second document immediately after the current transmission ends, the line is used efficiently.

🖉 Note

During Immediate Transmission or when in User Tools mode, the machine cannot scan an original.

Transmission with Image Rotation

Generally, place A4, $8^{1}/{_2}$ "×11" originals in the landscape orientation (\square). If you place an A4, $8^{1}/{_2}$ "×11" original in the portrait orientation (\square), the image is sent rotated by 90°. Providing the receiver has A4, $8^{1}/{_2}$ "×11" landscape paper (\square), the document is printed the same size as the original.

- □ This function is unavailable with Immediate Transmission.
- When Image Rotation is used, all documents are sent by normal Memory Transmission.
- This function is unavailable when using Mixed Original Sizes.

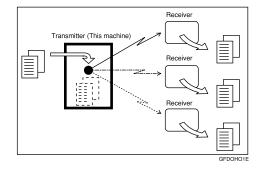
Simultaneous Broadcast

The optional extra G3 interface unit is required.

The Standard Broadcast function sends faxes one at a time to multiple destinations in the order of specified destinations.

However, the Simultaneous Broadcast function can simultaneously send faxes to multiple destinations using different lines.

This results in a shorter overall transmission time.



🖉 Note

- A maximum of three simultaneous transmissions (including LAN) are possible.
- When using the optional extra G3 interface unit, if you set the line selection as "G3 Auto" beforehand, the machine will use whichever G3 line is not busy. This increases efficiency.

JBIG Transmission

If you use JBIG (Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group) compression, you can send photographic originals faster than with other methods of compression.

p.31 "Original Type", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

Limitation

- You can only use this function on a telephone line.
- This function requires that the other party's fax machine has both the JBIG function and ECM function (G3 communication only).

🖉 Note

If ECM is turned off, JBIG Transmission is unavailable. See p.166 "ECM (Error Correction Mode)".

Transmitting Journal by E-mail

Preparation

To transmit the Journal by e-mail, it is necessary to make settings with User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 4).

The Journal is automatically transmitted to the e-mail address of the administrator after every 50 communications. A CSV format Journal is attached to the e-mail.

₿Important

□ This machine does not store sent CSV files. It is recommended that you double-check the e-mail address of an administrator before the Journal is transmitted. If the email address of the administrator is not correct, your important Journal may be lost. Sent CSV files are not left on the fax machine. See "File Transfer", *Network Guide*.

🖉 Note

- If the administrator's address is wrong, you may not be able to acquire the Journal.
- □ If the Journal fails to be transmitted in e-mail format, the Journal is printed out.
- The name of an attached CSV file is "JOURNAL+year, month, date, hours, minutes". For example, the file name transmitted in 14:40:12 on 20th, December, 2004 is "JOURNAL20041220144012.csv".
- The subject of a Journal sent by email begins with "Journal".

Journal by e-mail

If the setting is made so that the Journal is transmitted as an e-mail, it is transmitted to the e-mail address of an administrator.

This section describes the CSV format of the Journal attached to an e-mail.

- □ To transmit the Journal, it is necessary to make settings with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 4).
- You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).
- □ To set the administrator e-mail address, see "File Transfer", *Network Guide*.
- Depending on security settings, the Destination/Sender name may not appear.

Printed Reports

Memory Storage Report

This report is printed after an original is stored in memory. It helps you review the contents and the destinations of stored originals.

Limitation

If you use Parallel Memory Transmission, the Memory Storage Report is not printed.

🖉 Note

- You can turn this report on and off. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 03, bit 2).
- Even if the machine is set up not to print this report, it is still printed if an original could not be stored.
- You can select whether to include part of the original image on the report. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 7).
- □ You can display a destination with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 4).
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).

Communication Failure Report

This report is printed when a document could not be successfully transmitted with Memory Transmission.

If the machine is set up to print a Communication Result Report, this report is not printed. Use it to keep a record of failed transmissions so you can send them again.

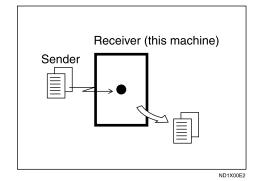
- You can select whether the Communication Failure Report and Transfer Result Report are automatically printed using the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 1).
- This report is only printed if the Communication Result Report is turned off and a document could not be successfully transmitted with Memory Transmission.
- You can select whether to include part of the original image on the report. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 7).
- □ You can display a destination with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 4).
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).
- The Page column gives the total number of pages. The Not Sent column gives the number of pages that could not be sent successfully.
- "Unprogrammed" indicates that the document could not be sent because the Transfer Station's fax number is incorrect, or not programmed.
- "--" indicates that the Internet Fax document was sent to the mail server programmed in this machine. (However, this does not mean the e-mail was delivered.)

5. Reception Features

Reception

Immediate Reception

Each page of a fax document is printed as soon as it is received. This method is used for standard fax documents.



Normally this machine receives documents by Immediate Reception. But Memory Reception is used when "Combine 2 originals", "Multi-copy Reception", "RX Reverse Printing" or "2 Sided Print" is set to "ON". See p.97 "Printing Options". If the Substitute Reception is used, a fax document is not printed: it is stored in memory. See p.84 "Memory Reception". See p.85 "Substitute Reception".

∰Important

When receiving important fax documents, it is recommended that you confirm the contents of the received documents with the senders.

🖉 Note

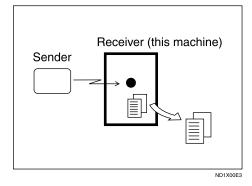
- The machine may not be able to receive fax documents when free memory space is low.
- If free memory reaches 0% during Immediate Reception, any further reception becomes impossible and the current communication is terminated.

Reception resolution

This machine supports Standard, Detail, and Super Fine resolutions for reception. If you do not have the optional expansion memory, faxes sent at Super Fine resolution is printed on your machine at Detail resolution. This may differ from the sender's intended resolution. See p.30 "Resolution", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Memory Reception

The machine waits until all pages of the document have been received into memory before printing it.



This method is used with the following functions:

- Combine 2 originals See p.100 "Combine Two Originals".
- Multi-copy when set to multiple copies See p.99 "Multi-Copy Reception".
- Reverse Order Printing See p.102 "Reverse Order Printing".
- 2 sided printing See p.98 "Two-Sided Printing".

∰Important

- About one hour after the machine is turned off, all fax documents stored in memory are lost. If any documents are lost in this way, a Power Failure Report is automatically printed when the operation switch is turned on. Use this report to identify lost documents.
- The machine may not be able to receive large numbers of documents or documents with high data content. In such cases, it is recommended that you switch off the above functions or install the optional expansion memory.

Limitation

The machine may not be able to receive fax documents when free memory space is low.

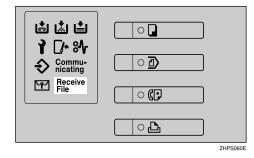
- If the free memory space reaches 0% during Memory Reception, the machine can no longer receive the current fax document and stops communicating.
- □ If you have selected Store for Reception File Setting, received document is saved on the hard disk and will not be printed. You can print those documents by operating the machine or a connected computer, as necessary. See p.195 "Storing or Printing Received Documents".

Substitute Reception

In Substitute Reception, a received fax document is stored in memory instead of being printed. Substitute Reception gets used when the machine cannot print any fax documents. Fax documents received using Substitute Reception are automatically printed when the condition which caused the machine to use Substitute Reception is rectified.

Depending on why the machine cannot print, Substitute Reception might be used for all fax documents received, or for only those documents that match a specified condition.

The Receive File indicator lights to let you know when fax documents have been received using Substitute Reception.



🖉 Note

- □ Reception may not take place if there is not enough free memory.
- □ If free memory reaches 0% during Substitute Reception, any further reception becomes impossible and the current communication is terminated.
- When a fax document is received after Store is selected for Reception File Setting in the Facsimile Features menu, the Receive File indicator lights.
- □ The Receive File indicator may light even when receiving documents using Immediate Reception.

Receiving documents unconditionally

If one of the conditions in the following list occurs, the machine receives all fax documents using Substitute Reception.

Problems	Causes	Solutions
The machine is printing with a different function.	The machine is busy print- ing with a different func- tion.	The document is automatically printed after the current job finishes.
The message "Follow- ing output tray is full. Remove pa- per." appears.	The output tray is full.	Remove paper from the output tray.
[≁ is lit.	The cover is open.	Close the cover shown in the display.

Receiving documents according to parameter-specified settings

If one of the conditions in the following list occurs, the machine receives only those documents that match the conditions specified in the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 05, bit 2,1).

Problems	Causes	Solutions
8 ∿ is lit.	Paper is jammed.	Remove the jammed paper. See " % Clearing Misfeeds", <i>General</i> <i>Settings Guide</i> .
∎ is lit.	All trays are out of paper.	Add paper. See " Loading Paper" , General Settings Guide.
is lit.	Toner is empty.	Replace the toner cartridge. See "LAdding Toner", <i>General Settings</i> <i>Guide</i> .
The message "This tray is out of or- der." appears.	All trays are out of action.	Call your service representative.

You can specify the following conditions with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 05, bit 2,1).

When Own Name or Own Fax Number is received

The machine switches to Substitute Reception only when the sender has programmed their Own Name or Own Fax Number. If the power is switched off for more than an hour, all the documents stored in memory are deleted. In that case, the Power Failure Report or the Journal can be used to identify which documents are lost so you can ask the senders to transmit them again.

∰Important

□ If a sender has not programmed their Own Name or Own Fax Number, the machine may fail to receive an important fax document. It is recommended that you ask important senders to program an Own Name or Own Fax Number in advance.

Free

The machine switches to Substitute Reception regardless of whether or not the sender has programmed their Own Name or Own Fax Number.

Polling ID match

The machine switches to Substitute Reception only when the programmed Polling ID of the other end matches the ID of this machine.

Disable

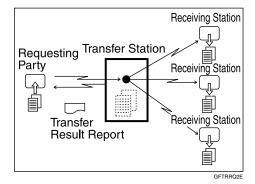
The machine does not receive any documents.

Reception Functions

Transfer Station

Transfer Stations allow you to expand the standard functions of your fax machine to set up complex networks.

The following diagram may make the concept clearer.



The following terminologies are used in this section:

Requesting Party

The machine where the document originates.

Transfer Station (this machine)

The machine that forwards the incoming document to another destination.

Receiving Station

The facsimile or computer that receives the document from the Transfer Station.

The final destination of the document, this is the machine the Transfer Station sends to. Receiving Stations must be programmed into a Destination key in the Transfer Station.

Preparation

This machine can receive forwarding requests by e-mail. Before you can use this function, you must make the following preparations.

- Program each Transfer Station number in this machine (Transfer Station) and in the Requesting Party itself. See p.192 "Transfer Report".
- Program the same Polling ID in both this machine (Transfer Station) and the Requesting Party. See p.193 "Programming a Polling ID".
- The Requesting Party's fax number must be programmed in the destination list of this machine (Transfer Station). The registration number must be between 00001 and 00100.
- The End Receiver's fax number, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination, must be programmed in the destination list of this machine (Transfer Station).

- You can receive Transfer Requests only when your machine has the capacity to store two or more destinations specified using the number keys.
- If the Requesting Party specifies a Group for the Receiving Stations and the total number of Receiving Stations exceeds 500, the Transfer Station cannot transfer the document and sends a Transfer Result Report to the Requesting Party.

If the Requesting Party specified a destination fax number, Internet Fax destination and IP-Fax destination programmed in Transfer Station as the End Receiver, this machine sends the document to the destination according to the User Parameter setting. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 32, bit 0).

🖓 Multistep transfer

The principles of Transfer Stations can be used to build up a multi-step facsimile network where documents are passed through several Transfer Stations. By programming the Receiving Stations in a Transfer Station Group, you can enable this machine to transfer documents onto other Transfer Stations.

For more information, contact your service representative.

This function can only be used if the machines are made by the same manufacturer.

Sending the Transfer Result Report

This machine compares the fax number of the Requesting Party with the Requesting Party's number programmed as a Destination key. If the lower five digits of the two numbers match, it sends the Transfer Result Report to the Requesting Party.

For example:

- Requesting Party's own dial number: 001813-11112222
- Transfer Station's Destination key: 03-11112222

.

Transfer Result Report

Preparation

Program the Requesting Party fax number into a Destination key in the Transfer Station (this machine) in advance.

Program your own fax number. See p.192 "Transfer Report".

Program the Polling ID. See p.193 "Programming a Polling ID".

This reports whether transmission to the Receiving Stations was successful or not.

When the Transfer Station has transferred the document to all Receiving Stations, it sends the Transfer Result Report back to the Requesting Party. The machine prints the report if it cannot be sent back to the Requesting Party.

Note 🖉

- You can select whether the Communication Failure Report and Transfer Result Report be automatically printed using the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 1).
- You can set whether a portion of the original image is printed on the report with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 7).
- "Unprogrammed" indicates that the document could not be sent because the end receiver's address is incorrect or not programmed.
- "--" indicates that the Internet Fax document was sent to the mail server programmed in this machine.

5

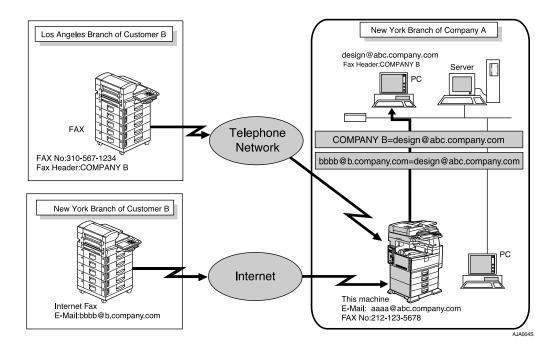
Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail)

When this machine receives a transfer request by e-mail, the Transfer Result Report is sent by e-mail to the Requesting Party after completing all transmissions to the specified Transfer Stations. If the Administrator's email address is programmed, the Transfer Result Report e-mail is forwarded to that address.

- "Unprogrammed" indicates that the document could not be sent because the end receiver's address is incorrect or not programmed.
- "--" indicates that the Internet Fax document was sent to the mail server programmed in this machine.
- When using multistep transfer, the Transfer Result Report e-mail is sent to the last Transfer Station that sent Transfer Request.

Forwarding Received Documents

This machine can forward received documents to other destinations programmed in memory based on Own Name, Own Fax Number or sender's e-mail address. A fax number, Internet Fax address, IP-Fax address, or folder address can be set as a Transfer Box. If an e-mail address is programmed as the destination, documents received are forwarded as e-mail.



Limitation

□ A maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group.

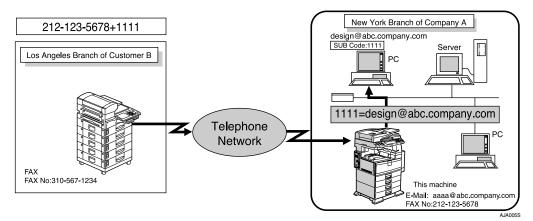
🔗 Note

- □ You need to specify the Forwarding destination in advance. See p.162 "Forwarding".
- □ If you want to forward documents to a different destination depending on the sender, see p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently".
- □ You can select whether the machine prints out the documents it forwards with User Parameters (switch 11, bit 6). For details, see p.167 "User Parameters".
- You can set whether or not the Folder Transfer Result Report is transmitted to the specified e-mail address if folders are programmed as the forwarding destinations to which documents are sent from all senders or Special Senders. For details, see p.198 "Folder Transfer Result Report".

Routing Received Documents with SUB Code

When a document is received, its SUB Code is compared to user codes programmed in Personal Boxes, and if a match is found, the document is routed to the destination whose user code is specified. If the destination specified is an email address, the received document is routed to that destination as e-mail.

In addition to SUB Codes, you can use the forward feature to send all received transmissions to a specific e-mail address. See p.162 "Forwarding".



Preparation

You must set the Personal Box and register a delivery destination beforehand. See p.182 "Programming/changing Personal Boxes".

Limitation

- □ This function is not available when you set received documents to be delivered to the network delivery server.
- **D** Documents cannot be routed to folders using this function.

🖉 Note

□ You can route documents received from any fax machine, regardless of manufacturer.

Transferring Received Documents

Originals sent with a SUB Code that matches the SUB Code programmed as a Transfer Box are received then relayed to the programmed receiver.

When e-mail addresses are programmed in the Transfer Station as receivers, received documents are sent in an e-mail format to the receivers.

Preparation

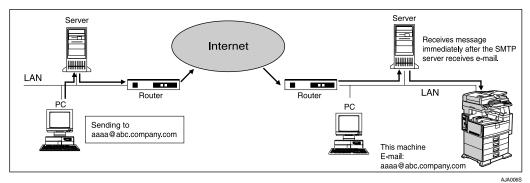
Transfer Boxes and Receiving Stations must be set up in order to transfer received documents. See p.188 "Programming/changing Transfer Boxes".

- **Transfer Results are not sent back to the Requesting Party.**
- □ You can transfer data received from any fax machine, regardless of manufacturer.

SMTP Reception Using Internet Fax

You can set this machine to SMTP reception.

With SMTP reception, e-mail is received as soon as it is sent to the e-mail address set by the machine. You can route received e-mail to other Internet Fax machines as well.



Preparation

Set this machine beforehand using the MX record of the DNS server to enable SMTP reception. Also, set the reception protocol to SMTP under "System Settings". See "Connecting and Setting Up", *Network Guide*.

🖉 Note

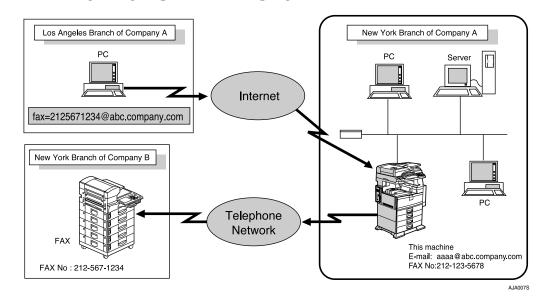
- Even if SMTP reception is enabled on the DNS server, e-mail sent from the SMTP server will not be received and the machine reports an error if SMTP reception is not set. Also, the SMTP server sends an error notification to the originator.
- If an error occurs while receiving e-mail, reception is aborted, the e-mail is deleted, and Error Report is printed. Also, the SMTP server will send an error notification to the originator.
- When the SMTP server attempts to route received documents to this machine while the machine is transmitting an e-mail, the machine will respond to the SMTP server with a "busy" signal. Then, the SMTP server usually tries resending the documents until the set timeout.

Reference

- p.70 "Auto E-mail Reception", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*
- p.94 "Routing e-mail received via SMTP"

Routing e-mail received via SMTP

E-mail received via SMTP can be routed to other fax machines. It can also be routed to single or group destinations programmed in the destination list.



Preparation

Before routing e-mail received via SMTP, you first must set "SMTP RX File Delivery Settings" to "On". See p.148 "E-mail Settings".

Limitation

Depending on security settings, this function may not be available.

🔗 Note

- □ If an e-mail transfer request is received when the "SMTP RX File Delivery Settings" is "Off", this machine responds with an error message to the SMTP server.
- □ You can make settings that limit transfer to specified originators. See p.148 "E-mail Settings".
- Using this function, you can also send documents from your e-mail application to e-mail addresses and G3 fax machines' destinations through this machine simultaneously. For details about specifying the destinations of fax machines, see the following.

Specifying E-mail Transfer

The originator can request transfer of e-mail sent to another fax machine by specifying the e-mail address as follows:

Fax Number

fax=destination fax number@host name of this machine. domain name Example: to transfer to fax number 212-123-4567, specify: fax=2121234567@abc.company.com

Single destination programmed in the destination list

fax=#registration number of 5 digits or less@host name of this machine.domain name

Example: to transfer to the destination number 00001: fax=#00001@abc.company.com

Group destination programmed in the destination list

fax=#**registration number of 5 digits or less@host name of this machine.domain name

Example: to transfer to the destination programmed under Group number 04: fax=#**04@abc.company.com

Limitation

□ A maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group.

JBIG Reception

If you use JBIG (Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group) compression, you can send photographic originals faster than with other methods of compression. It allows you to receive documents sent in the JBIG format through JBIG Transmission.

Limitation

- You can only use this function with telephone line.
- If ECM is turned off, JBIG Reception is unavailable. See p.166 "ECM (Error Correction Mode)".

Auto Fax Reception Power-Up

This machine can be set to shut down automatically if no one has used it for a while. In these situations, even though the operation switch is off, the machine can still receive incoming documents as long as the main power switch is on.

∰Important

Reception is not possible if both the operation switch and main power switch are turned off.

Note

- You can set whether documents are printed as soon as they are received (Immediate Reception) with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 14, bit 0).
- You can also have fax documents received by Memory Reception (Substitute Reception) printed after the machine is turned on.

Printing Options

Print Completion Beep

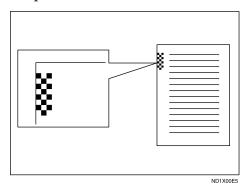
When this function is turned on, the machine beeps to let you know when a received document is printed.

🔗 Note

You can alter the volume of the beep or turn it off completely (set the volume to the minimum level).
 See p.87 "Adjusting the Volume", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Checkered Mark

When this function is turned on, a Checkered Mark is printed on the first page of fax documents to help you separate them.

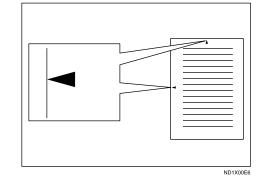


🔗 Note

You can turn this function on or off using Reception Setting. See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Centre Mark

When this function is enabled, marks are printed halfway down the left side and at the top centre of each page received. This makes it easy for you to position a hole puncher correctly when you file received documents.



- □ The Centre Mark may deviate a little from the exact centre of the edge.
- You can enable or disable this function using Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Reception Time

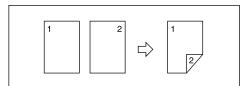
You can have the date, time, and file number printed at the bottom of the document when it is received. You can turn this function on or off using Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".

🔗 Note

- When a received document is printed on two or more sheets, the reception time is printed on the last page.
- The time when the document was printed can also be recorded on the document. If you need this function, contact your service representative.

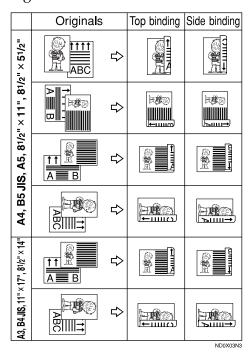
Two-Sided Printing

You can have a received document printed on both sides of a sheet. You can turn this function on or off using Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".



Limitation

□ To use this function, all pages of the received document must be of the same size—inform the sending party of this beforehand if necessary. You must also have paper set in the machine of the same size as that sent by the sending party. In Two-Sided Printing, this machine will correctly receive in A3 \Box , B4 **JIS** (Japanese Industrial Standard) \Box , A4 \Box \Box , B5 JIS \Box \Box , A5 \square \square $(11"\times17"\square, 8^1/_2"\times14"\square, 15)$ $8^{1}/_{2}$ "×11" $\square \square, 8^{1}/_{2}$ "×5¹/₂" \square). The following table shows the results that can be achieved when receiving with this machine.



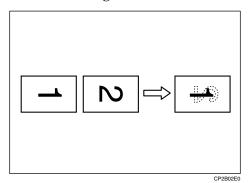
- □ This function works only when all pages are of the same width and received into memory.
- □ This function cannot be used with Combine Two Originals.

🔗 Note

- Printouts may vary depending on how the sender sets the originals.
- You can select to have documents only from selected senders printed in this way. See p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently".
- Stored documents of the same size are printed on the same paper. Some stored documents may be unavailable for this printing option.

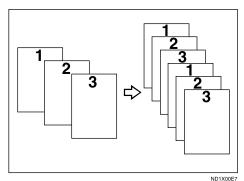
180-degree rotation printing

When printing on both sides of the paper, this machine rotates images as shown in the diagram.



Multi-Copy Reception

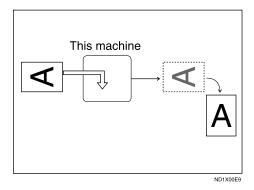
If you switch this function on, multiple copies of each incoming fax document is printed. You can also select to have multiple copies made of documents from particular senders. See p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently". See p.147 "Reception Settings".



- □ The maximum number of copies that can be made for each document is 10.
- When using the Multi-copy function with specified senders, the maximum number of copies is 10.
- You can turn this function on or off using Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".
- The machine will use Memory Reception for Multi-copy Reception.

Image Rotation

If you have set paper in the standard tray D, incoming fax documents are automatically rotated to fit onto the paper.

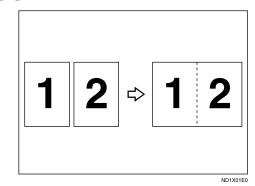


🔗 Note

You can choose to have received documents printed from a specified tray. See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Combine Two Originals

When two documents of the same size and orientation are received consecutively, they are printed on a single sheet when you turn this function on. This can help you economize on paper.



- Two A5 documents are printed side by side on a sheet of A4 .
- Two B5 JIS documents are printed side by side on a sheet of B4 JIS .
- Two A4 documents are printed side by side on a sheet of A3 .
- Two 8¹/₂"×5¹/₂" documents are printed side by side on a sheet of 8¹/₂"×11" .

Limitation

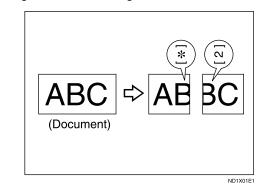
- □ This function does not work with documents larger than A5 □, B5 JIS □, A4 □, 8¹/₂"×11" □ or 8¹/₂"×5¹/₂" □. When A5 □, B5 JIS □, A4 □, 8¹/₂"×11" □ or 8¹/₂"×5¹/₂" □ size paper is loaded in the machine, each page of the received document is printed on a single sheet. When A5 □, B5 JIS □, A4 □, 8¹/₂"×11" □ or 8¹/₂"×5¹/₂" □ size paper is loaded in the machine, each page of the received document is printed on a single sheet. When A5 □, B5 JIS □, A4 □, 8¹/₂"×11" □ or 8¹/₂"×5¹/₂" □
- If paper matching the size and orientation of a received document is available, Combine Two Originals is not possible.
- If Combine Two Originals and 2 Sided Print are selected at the same time, 2 Sided Print takes priority and Combine Two Originals is canceled.

🖉 Note

- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 10, bit 1).
- □ This function uses Memory Reception.

Page Separation and Length Reduction

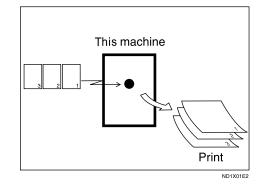
If the size of a received document is longer than the paper loaded in the machine, each page of the document can be split and printed on several sheets, or reduced and printed on a single sheet. For example, this function splits the document if the document length is 20 mm (0.79") or longer than the paper used. The document is reduced if it is less than 20 mm (0.79"). When a document is split, an asterisk (*) is inserted at the split position and about 10 mm (0.39") of the split area is duplicated on the top of the second sheet.



- Your service representative can customize this function with the following settings:
 - Reduction
 - Print split mark
 - Overprinting
 - Overprinting length
 - Guideline for split
- You can adjust the overprinting and reduction lengths within the following ranges:
 - Overprinting length: 4 mm (0.16"), 10 mm (0.39"), 15 mm (0.59")
 - Guideline for split: 5-155 mm (5 mm steps)/0.2-6.1" (0.2" steps)

Reverse Order Printing

Normally, pages of the received document are printed and stacked on the tray in the order they are received. If you turn this function on, the machine will start printing the document from the last page received.

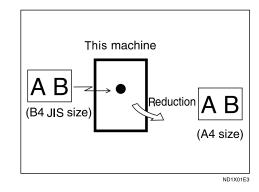


🖉 Note

- You can turn this function on or off using Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".
- □ When this function is on, the first page is printed last.
- □ This function uses Memory Reception.

Page Reduction

If you receive a document that is longer than the paper in the tray, the machine usually prints it on two pages. If you turn this function on, the machine reduces the width and length of the received image so that it will fit on one page. If A4D paper is loaded and a document of B4 JISD size is received, the machine will reduce the document to a single A4D sheet.



🖉 Note

- You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 10, bit 3).
- □ When this function is used, the printing quality may not be as good as usual.

✓ Reference

p.101 "Page Separation and Length Reduction"

TSI Print (Transmitting Subscriber Identification Print)

Usually the sender's Fax Header is printed on received documents. If the sender has not programmed their Fax Header, you will not be able to identify them. However, if you turn this function on, the sender's Own Name or Own Fax Number is printed instead so you can find out where the document came from. When you receive an Internet Fax document, the email address of the sender is printed.

PReference

p.79 "Initial Settings and Adjustments", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*

🖉 Note

You can turn this function on or off in the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 02, bit 3).

If There Is No Paper of the Correct Size

If there is no paper in the machine that matches the size of a received document, the machine will choose a paper size based on the paper available.

Page reduction	Disabled
Reduction in Sub- scan Direction	Enabled
Page Separation Threshold	20 mm (0.79")
Width or Length Pri- ority	Width

🔗 Note

- The document is split over two sheets of paper depending on the paper size.
- Paper placed in the bypass tray is not usually selected for printing a received document. However, you can use this tray if you select the bypass tray as the main paper tray using Reception with Specified Senders. See p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently".
- □ Widths that this machine can receive are A4, B4 JIS, LT (8¹/₂"×11") and A3. Any documents narrower than A4 or LT (8¹/₂"×11") are received at A4 or LT (8¹/₂"×11") width. The length of documents depends on the document.
- The paper size used to print a received document may be different from the size of the sent original.

p.100 "Image Rotation"

p.101 "Page Separation and Length Reduction"

p.102 "Page Reduction"

"Tray Paper Settings", General Settings Guide

Setting priority trays

With the same size of paper loaded into multiple trays, you can make the machine use one tray for one function and another tray for another function. For example, you may load white A4 paper into tray 1 to use when making copies, and yellow A4 paper into tray 2 to use when printing received faxes. You can then easily identify for which purpose paper has been output. You can perform this setting using System Settings. See "Tray Paper Settings", *General Settings Guide*.

🖉 Note

When a different size of document from the priority tray is received, the tray containing the same size of paper as the received document is used.

Just size printing

If you enable this function, received documents are printed on the sheet that has the highest priority. This function is enabled with User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 05, bit 5).

If the paper tray is not stocked with paper of a suitable size to print a received document, a message appears on the display prompting you to load paper of the required size. When you have loaded new paper, press **[Exit]** to print the document.

O Re Set origina	ady I and specify destination.	Information 99%
Q	No paper. Load following paper.	
	A4(_7)	Exit

- □ After pressing **[Exit]**, procedure varies depending on machine status when the message occurred.
 - If any received documents or reports were being printed automatically, the printer automatically continues printing from where it left off.
 - If any documents or reports were being printed manually, the printer does not resume printing. Perform the operation from the beginning again.

Having incoming documents printed on paper from the bypass tray

You can print documents sent from Specified Senders on paper from the bypass tray.

Set as follows:

- Program a special sender and select the Bypass Tray for the paper tray type. See p.179 "Programming Bypass Tray Paper Size" under "Program Special Sender".
- Turn on the Authorized RX function under the Program Special Sender function. See p.179 "Programming Authorized RX and Special RX Function".

Limitation

When using this function, printed sheets cannot be delivered to the finisher output tray. Even if you specify the finisher output tray, sheets are delivered to the Internal Tray 1. See "General Features", General Settings Guide.

- □ You can load a maximum of 100 sheets of standard paper in the bypass tray.
- □ You can use a size of paper not loaded in the paper tray(s) in the bypass tray.
- The machine can detect A4, A3, A3, (8¹/₂"×11", 11"×17", paper sizes. When you load any other size, specify the paper size. However, if the specified paper size and size of paper set in the bypass tray do not match, paper jams may occur, or the image may be shortened. See p.179 "Programming Bypass Tray Paper Size".
- Documents printed on paper smaller than A4 may be shortened, or split across sheets.
- Paper longer than 600 mm may be creased, not sent, or jam.

- Print area depends on optional expansion memory, resolution, and vertical length of originals.
- If you use this function, Image Rotation and 180-Degree Rotating Printing are not possible.

Where Incoming Documents Are Delivered - Output Tray

Specifying Tray for Lines

The optional extra G3 interface unit is required.

You can specify the document feeding tray for each port (telephone, Internet Fax, IP-Fax). For example, you can specify documents received through the G3-1 port to be fed to the "Internal Tray 1" and documents received through the G3-2 port to be fed to the "Internal Tray 2", facilitating separation of files. You can also set the machine to output Internet Fax documents and ordinary faxes onto different trays.

🖉 Note

□ To use this function, specify the port and destination using [Specify Tray for Lines]. See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Tray Shift

The optional finisher is required.

When the optional finisher unit is selected for fax output, you can use the Tray Shift function whenever a fax or report is printed.

This is useful for separating faxes stacked in the finisher output tray. For example, if the previous incoming fax was output to the left, the next incoming fax will be output to the right and vice-versa.

🖉 Note

You can turn this function on or off with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 19, bit 0).

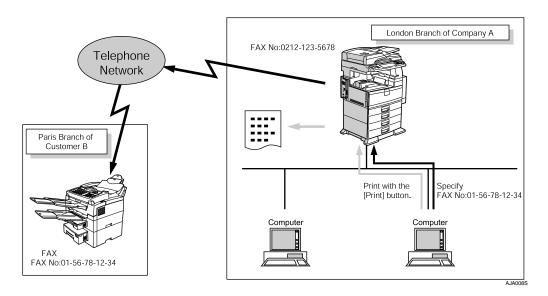
6. Fax via Computer

Sending Fax Documents from Computers

The optional printer/scanner unit is required.

Using computers connected to the machine through parallel ports (optional), IEEE 1394 (IP Over 1394) ports (optional), LANs, wireless LANs (optional), or USB 2.0 you can fax documents, created using Windows applications, to other fax machines over a telephone line.

- To send a fax, simply select **[Print]** from the Windows application, then select LAN-Fax as the printer, and then specify a destination. LAN-Fax enables paperless faxing from your computer to the other destinations.
- In addition to sending faxes, the LAN-Fax Driver allows this machine to be used for printing out documents prepared on a computer for proof checking.
- To use the LAN-Fax Driver, connect this machine to a LAN and make the necessary network settings, and then install the LAN-Fax Driver and the related utilities on your computer.



∰Important

Errors occurring when the machine is used as a LAN-Fax will not be displayed on the computer. Check for errors by using a Web Image Monitor. See Web Image Monitor help.

🖉 Note

□ It is recommended that you use a Web Image Monitor running under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.

Before Use

To use these features, a LAN-Fax Driver must be installed on your computer. Use the LAN-Fax Driver included on the printer CD-ROM. You must also make the required computer to fax network settings on the machine, according to the type of connection.

Reference

When a personal computer and the machine are connected in parallel:

See "System Settings (Parallel Connection)", *Printer Reference*.

When using Ethernet, IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394), or IEEE 802.11b (wireless LAN):

See "Connecting and Setting Up", *Network Guide*.

Installing the Software

You need to install a LAN-Fax Driver on your computer before using the LAN-Fax functions. The LAN-Fax Driver is on the CD-ROM included with the printer.

Address Book and LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor are installed with the LAN-Fax Driver. Address Book helps you edit LAN-Fax transmission destinations. LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor helps you edit LAN-Fax cover sheets.

🖉 Note

The following explanation assumes that you are familiar with general Windows procedures and practices. If you are not, see the operating instructions that come with Windows for details.

Auto run program

With Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003 and Windows NT 4.0, the installers for various drivers and utilities launch automatically as Auto Run programs when you insert the CD-ROM.

If your operating system is Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003 or Windows NT 4.0, installing a printer driver using Auto Run requires Administrator permissions. When you install LAN-Fax Driver using Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrator permissions.

🖉 Note

- □ If the plug and play function starts, click [Cancel] in the [New Hardware Found], [Device Driver Wizard], or [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box, and then insert the CD-ROM. The [New Hardware Found] or [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears depending on the system version of Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0.
- □ Auto Run might not work automatically with certain OS settings. If this is the case, double-click "Setup.exe", located on the CD-ROM root directory.
- □ If you want to cancel Auto Run, hold down the **[SHIFT]** key (when your system is Windows 2000/Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, hold down the left **[SHIFT]** key) while inserting the CD-ROM. Keep the **[SHIFT]** key held down until the computer stops reading the CD-ROM.
- Clicking [Cancel] during installation aborts the installation. If you cancel the installation, restart your computer and install the rest of the software or printer driver.

LAN-Fax Driver, Address Book, and LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor can be installed by Auto Run.

Installing individual applications

Preparation

Before installing the above applications, install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client. See "Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM", *Printer Reference*.

Use the following procedure to install LAN-Fax Driver, Address Book, and LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor at one time.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM included with this machine into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.

The installer launches automatically, and the language selection window appears.

🖉 Note

- Depending on your operating system settings, the installer may not launch automatically. If it does not, double-click "Setup.exe" in the CD-ROM root directory to launch the installer.
- Select the interface language of the software, and then click [OK].

Click [LAN-Fax Driver].

The software license agreement window appears.

Read all of the terms and, if you agree, select [l accept the agreement.], and then click [Next].

🖉 Note

□ If you select **[I don't accept the agreement.]**, you cannot complete the installation.

- Select the [LAN-Fax Driver] check box, and then click [Next].
- Confirm that the [Printer Name:<LAN-Fax M7>] check box is selected, and then click [Continue].

🖉 Note

□ Select the desired port.

Click [Finish].

The installation completion dialog box appears.

9 Click [Finish].

Click [Exit].

Applications Stored on the CD-ROM

This section provides information about LAN-Fax Driver, Address Book, and LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor.

LAN-Fax Driver

This driver allows you to use LAN-Fax functions.

Location of the file

The following folders are on the CD-ROM:

- LAN-Fax Driver for Windows 95/98/Me \DRIVERS\LAN-FAX\ WIN9X_ME
- LAN-Fax Driver for Windows NT 4.0 \DRIVERS\LAN-FAX\NT4
- LAN-Fax Driver for Windows 2000/XP \DRIVERS\LAN-FAX\ WIN2K_XP

Operating environment

- Computer PC/AT compatible
- Operating systems Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me Microsoft Windows 2000/XP Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Microsoft Windows NT 4.0
- Display VGA 640×480 pixels or more

Limitation

- All operations cannot be guaranteed depending on the system environment.
- When you use Windows NT, LAN-Fax Driver will not work in an RISC base processor (MIPS R series, Alpha AXP, PowerPC) environment.

🔗 Note

Before beginning installation, exit all other applications.

Address Book

Address Book helps you edit LAN-Fax transmission destinations.

Operating systems

Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me Microsoft Windows 2000/XP Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor

LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor helps you edit LAN-Fax cover sheets.

Operating systems

Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me Microsoft Windows 2000/XP Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

Setting LAN-Fax Driver Properties

🖉 Note

If your operating system is Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000/XP, or Windows Server 2003, log on using an account that has Administrator rights.

Setting print properties

This section describes how to make settings such as paper size or resolution.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

🖉 Note

- With Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003, select [Printers and Faxes] on the [Start] menu.
- With Windows XP Home Edition, select [Control Panel] on the [Start] menu. Next select [Printers and Other Hardware], and then [Printers and Faxes].
- 2 Select to highlight [LAN-Fax M7], then click [Properties] on the [File] menu.

🖉 Note

With Windows NT, click [Document Defaults...] on the [File] menu.

3 Set the print properties.

When using Windows 95/98/Me

Click the [Paper] tab.

2 Set the following properties.

- Paper size
- Orientation
- Tray
- Resolution
- Gray scale
- Printing images of True Type fonts

When using Windows NT 4.0

Set the following properties.

- Paper size
- Orientation
- Tray
- Resolution

When using Windows 2000/XP or Windows Server 2003

Click the [Printing Preferences...] button.

2 Set the following properties.

- Paper size
- Orientation
- Tray
- Resolution

Click [OK].

Making Settings for Option Configuration

Make settings for optional units installed in this machine.

🖉 Note

- If the options on this machine are not configured as instructed, LAN-Fax functions may fail.
- When this machine is connected to a network, option configuration is automatically performed. For details, see LAN-Fax Driver's Help.
- Perform steps **1** and **2** in "Setting print properties".
- Click the [Accessories] tab, and then make the settings for the option configuration.

When using a network

If the settings do not match the installed optional units, click [Load from Device].

When not using a network

• Select the check box of the installed optional units.

Click [Apply].

Option configuration settings are complete.

Click [OK].

. V [Accessories] tab

The **[Accessories]** tab contains the following items besides option configuration items.

Prohibit manual destination entry

Check this option to inhibit direct destination specification.

Enable e-mail

Check this when using Internet Fax with the LAN-Fax function.

IP-Fax

Check this option when using IP-Fax.

After checking this option, select a protocol by clicking an appropriate radio button.

Protocols are configured under IP-Fax Setting. See p.150 "IP-Fax Settings".

.

Basic Transmission

This section describes how to send fax documents created using Windows applications.

To send a fax, simply select **[Print...]** from the Windows application, then select **[LAN-Fax M7]** as the printer, and then specify a destination in the **[LAN-Fax]** dialog box.

Open the application document you want to send or create a new document, and then perform the following procedure.

For details, see Help.

Limitation

- When using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you cannot send documents to this machine using more than one LAN-Fax at the same time.
- On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

2 Select [LAN-Fax M7] in the [Name:] list.

Click [OK].

The LAN-Fax dialog box appears.

🔗 Note

□ The setting method may differ depending on the application you are using. In all cases, select **[LAN-Fax M7]** for the printer.

Specify the destination.

Use one of the following procedures to specify a destination. For details, see LAN-Fax Driver's Help.

🖉 Note

- When user authentication is used with this machine, click [User Settings].
- □ You can specify up to 500 destinations.
- Up to 400 documents transmitted from LAN-Fax can be kept on standby in this machine.

Specifying a destination using a destination list

Click the [Address Book] or [Specify Destination] tab.

The **[Address Book]** or **[Specify Destination]** tab appears.

2 Select the [Device Address] (or [Use device address]) check box. The machine's address is displayed in the [Device Address] field on the [Address Book] tab. On the [Specify Destination] tab, enter the registration number of the Destination key.

Olick [Set as Destination].

The entered destination is added and appears in the **[List of Destination:]** box.

🖉 Note

□ If you add a destination by mistake, click the wrong destination, and then click [Delete from List].

5 To specify more destinations, repeat steps **3** and **4**.

Specifying a destination using Address Book

In order to use this method, you need to register destinations in the address list using Address Book. See p.110 "Address Book".

Click the [Address Book] tab.

The [Address Book] tab appears.

Select a CSV file containing the desired destination list, from the drop-down menu.

🖉 Note

□ Up to the three most recently used files appear in the dropdown menu. To use a destination list that did not appear, click **[Browse...]**, and then select the file. Select [Contact] or [Group] in the [Name:] dropdown menu as the display format.

🔗 Note

- Destination list contents change as follows, depending on the option selected:
 - Contact: Individual name, company name, department name, fax number
 - Group: Group name
- □ If you selected [Group] from the [Name:] dropdown menu, proceed to step ⑤.
- Select the type of fax from the [Type:] dropdown menu.

🖉 Note

- □ Select the fax type as follows:
 - Send by standard fax: [Fax]
 - Send by Internet Fax: [E-mail]
 - Send by IP-Fax: [IP-Fax]
- If you selected [Group] from the [Name:] dropdown menu, you cannot select the fax type. Proceed to step 6.
- Click the destination in the destination list to highlight it, and then click [Set as Destination].

The entered destination is added and appears in the **[List of Destination:]** box.

🔗 Note

- □ If you add a destination by mistake, click the wrong destination, and then click [Delete from List].
- **6** To specify more destinations, repeat steps **2** through **5**.

Specifying a destination by directly entering a fax number, Internet Fax destination, or IP-Fax destination

Click the [Specify Destination] tab.

The **[Specify Destination]** tab appears.

Select the type of fax from the [Type:] dropdown menu.

🖉 Note

□ Select the fax type as follows:

- Send by standard fax: [Fax]
- Send by Internet Fax: [E-mail]
- Send by IP-Fax: [IP-Fax]
- □ After you select the fax type, the items corresponding to the selected type appear.

3 Specify the destination.

🔗 Note

- Specify the destination depending on the selected fax type as follows:
 - If you selected **[Fax]**: enter the fax number.
 - If you selected **[E-mail]**: enter the e-mail address.
 - If you selected **[IP-Fax]**: enter the IP-Fax destination.
- □ You can enter up to 128 characters for the destination.
- To enter a pause in the fax number, click [Pause]. If you selected [E-mail] or [IP-Fax] in step ②, [Pause] is not available.

PReference

p.35 "Entering a Fax Number", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.37 "Entering an E-mail Address", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.38 "Entering an IP-Fax Destination", *Facsimile Refer*ence <*Basic Features*>

4 Specify settings according to type of fax transmission.

🖉 Note

- Specify settings according to the type of fax transmission selected in step 2, as follows:
 - If you selected **[Fax]**, select a line in the **[Line:]** list.
 - If you selected **[E-mail]**, select the **[Do not use SMTP server]** check box if you want to bypass the SMTP server. See p.66 "Bypassing the SMTP Server", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.
 - If you selected **[IP-Fax]**, select a protocol in the **[Protocol:]** list.

6 Click [Set as Destination].

The entered destination is added and displayed in the **[List of Destination:]** box.

- □ If you have added a wrong destination by mistake, click the wrong destination, and then click [Delete from List].
- **6** To specify more destinations, repeat steps **2** through **5**.

5 Specify necessary options.

Reference

p.115 "Specifying options".

p.117 "Confirming transmission results by e-mail".

Click [Send].

🖉 Note

□ When you click **[Send & Print]**, the fax is sent to the destination and your machine prints a copy of the document you sent.

Specifying options

You can specify the options in the following list.

For details, see LAN-Fax Driver's Help.

- Sending at a Specific Time
- Print Sender Stamp
- Attach Cover Sheet
- Two-Sided Printing
- Display Preview
- Save as File
- Document Server

Click [Send Options].

The **[Send Options]** tab appears.

2 Specify the options you want to use.

To send a fax document at a specific time

• Select the [Sending at specific time] check box, and then specify a transmission time.

2 Click [Send].

To print a sender stamp

- Select the [Print Fax Header] check box.
- 2 Click [Send].

To attach a cover sheet

Select the [Attach a Cover Sheet] check box to attach a cover sheet to the document you are sending.

🔗 Note

- □ Click **[Edit Cover Sheet...]** to edit the cover sheet. See p.120 "Editing Fax Cover Sheets".
- 2 Click [Send].

To specify two-sided printing

- Select the [2 sided printing] check box.
- Olick [Send].

To display preview

Selecting the **[Preview]** check box allows you to check how the fax document will be output at the destination.

- Select the [Preview] check box.
- **2** Click [Send] or [Send & Print].

The [Preview] window appears.

3 Click [Next] or [Previous] to check the image.

- 🔗 Note
- □ To close the [Preview] window, click [Cancel].
- □ To print the preview image, click **[OK]**.

Saving as files

You can save the fax document in TIFF format.

🖉 Note

Single-page documents are saved as single TIFF files, and multiple-page documents are saved as multiple TIFF files.

• Select the [Save as file] check box.

- 2 Click [Save to...].
- **3** Select a folder on the folder tree.

Select a method of file naming.

🖉 Note

□ To enter a file name manually, select the **[Specify file name when saving]** check box. To have the file assigned a name and saved automatically, select the **[Automatically create a new file]** check box.

6 Click **[0K]**.

Click [Save] or [Save & Send].

🖉 Note

- □ If you select **[Automatically create a new file]**, the image file is assigned a name and saved under the specified folder.
- The file name will be RicHH-MMSS.tif (HH: hours, MM: minutes, SS: seconds).

7 Enter a file name.

🖉 Note

You can also change the folder in this step.

8 Click [Save].

The image file is saved in the specified folder.

To store the fax document on the Document Server

Select the [Send to Document Server] check box, and then enter a user name, file name, and password.

🔗 Note

If [Hard Disk Unit] is not selected in [Accessories] on the printer properties dialog box, you cannot select [Document Server].

2 Click [Send].

Checking transmission using LAN-Fax Driver

From "SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin", "SmartDeviceMonitor for Client", or Web Image Monitor, you can check information about files sent using LAN-Fax Driver. You can check the latest 70 files.

Also, you can save the contents of the communication management report in a personal computer as a CSV file using **[Spool Printing Job List(Printer)]** in "SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin".

See the relevant Help for details.

🔗 Note

When data is transmitted from the LAN-Fax Driver via the "SmartDeviceMonitor for Client" port, the "Data transfer completed" message appears on the computer's display, so you can easily ascertain the communication progress. However, if the volume of communication data from the LAN-Fax to this machine increases, the message may appear during the operation, due to the differences in memory capacity between this machine and "SmartDeviceMonitor for Client". For more accurate fax transmission results, use "Communication Result Report". See p.117 "Confirming transmission results by email".

Confirming transmission results by email

After communicating in the LAN-Fax mode, this function transmits the communication results with the computer by e-mail.

When you have done **[Send]** or **[Send & Print]** using the LAN-Fax, and when the communication was successful, it transmits an e-mail of the transmission result. See p.28 "Communication Result Report (Memory Transmission)", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Result notification e-mail is sent when printing is complete, or if an error occurs during communication between this machine and a computer.

🖉 Note

- You can confirm transmission results using the E-mail TX Results function and the Communication Result Report. You can set whether to use both of these together in User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 10, bit 6).
- □ If there be any insufficient configurations in the e-mail menu on this machine, or if "Auto Specify Sender Name" is set to "Off", the LAN-Fax result notification e-mail is not transmitted, and the LAN-Fax Result Report is printed. See "File Transfer", *Network Guide* for the e-mail settings, and see p.118 "LAN-Fax Result Report" for the LAN-Fax Result Report.
- Click the [E-mail Settings] tab.
- 2 Select the [Notify] check box under [E-mail TX results].
- **3** Enter the destination.

When entering the e-mail address directly

- Click the [Specify destinations] radio button.
- 2 Enter the e-mail address in the [Specify destinations] field.

When entering the machine's programmed address

- ① Click the [Device Address] radio button.
- 2 Enter the registration number of the Destination key in the [Specify destinations] box.

🔗 Note

□ This field is unavailable when the **[Specify destinations]** is selected, and you cannot enter anything in the text box.

4 Click [Send].

LAN-Fax Result Report

If "Email TX results" is set to "Notify", if there be any insufficient configurations in the e-mail menu on this machine, or if "Auto Specify Sender Name" is set to "Off", the LAN-Fax result notification e-mail is not transmitted, and the LAN-Fax Result Report is printed. If the "E-mail TX Results" of "Sender Settings" has not been set at "Yes", the LAN-Fax Result Report is printed.

🖉 Note

□ Whether or not the LAN-Fax Result Report is printed, can be configured at "User Parameters". See p.167 "User Parameters" (Switch 20, bit 0).

□ When executing **[Send]** or **[Send & Print]** with the LAN-Fax Driver, and when the E-mail TX Result Report has not arrived, the Communication Result Report is printed. See p.28 "Communication Result Report (Memory Transmission)", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

Printing and Saving

You can print documents created using Windows applications.

You can also save documents in TIFF format.

Open the application document you want to print or create a new document, and then perform the following procedure.

For details, see Help.

🖉 Note

You can select the length of time the machine keeps document data in memory if print failed due to problems such as paper shortage or paper jams. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 20, bit 2/3/4/5).

On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

2 Select [LAN-Fax M7] in the [Name:] list, and then click [OK].

The **[LAN-Fax]** dialog box appears.

🖉 Note

The setting method may differ depending on the application you are using. In all cases, select [LAN-Fax M7] for the printer.

Printing

Click [Print] or [Send & Print].

🖉 Note

□ You can save the fax image in a file. See p.116 "Saving as files".

Editing Address Book

You can program and edit destinations in the address list using the Address Book.

For details, see Help.

On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs], [LAN-Fax Utilities], and then click [Address Book].

The **[Address Book]** dialog box appears.

- If LAN-Fax Driver has already started up, click [Edit Address Book...].
- 2 Click [New/Browse...], and then select the CSV file containing the address list to be edited.

Edit an existing destination or program a new one.

🖉 Note

- You can use files created in CSV format, as Address Book data. For this purpose, create CSV files that conform to a certain format. For more information, see Help.
- To program the contents of the Address Book of this machine to the destination list, select the [Use device address] check box, then enter the Destination key's registration number in the [Device Address] field.

Programming new destinations

Enter the destination and name.

🖉 Note

- You can enter a name, company name, department name, fax number, e-mail address, and IP-Fax address. The name and destination (Fax Number, Email Address or IP-Fax Address) cannot be omitted.
- For [Line:] under [Fax number:], select the appropriate line type; G3, G3-2, G3-3, G3 Dir. Auto, G3 PABX Auto, or I-G3.
- □ To bypass the SMTP server, under the **[E-mail address:]** box, select the **[Do not use SMTP server]** check box.
- □ For [Protocol:] under [IP-Fax address:], select [H.323] or [SIP].

Olick [Add].

The destination is added to the destination list.

Editing programmed destinations

- Select the destination you want to edit so it is highlighted in the list.
- **2** Edit the data.
- Click [Update].

Deleting programmed destinations

- Select the destination you want to delete so it is highlighted in the list.
- 2 Click [Delete].
- Click [Yes].
- Click [Close].
- **5** If you made changes to a destination, a confirmation message appears. To save the changes, click [Yes].

If you do not want to save the changes and want to quit editing, click **[No]**.

To return to the editing display, click **[Cancel]**.

🖉 Note

The confirmation dialog box does not appear when you have not made any changes after starting Address Book.

Using the machine's Address Book data in the destination list of the LAN-Fax

You can save information about fax destinations registered to this machine in a personal computer as a CSV file using "Address Management Tool" in "SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin". Saved CSV files can be inserted into the destination table of the LAN-Fax Driver by selecting **[New/Browse...]** in Address Book. Save the file again for the LAN-Fax Driver.

For details, see "SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin" Help.

🖉 Note

- □ When destinations registered in groups by this machine are inserted into Address Book, each person's destination is determined according to the following order of priority (check before inserting and changing the order of priority, if necessary): IP-Fax destination → Fax number → Mail address
- Depending on the machine type, you may not be able to use the machine when it is updating the Address Book using CSV files (retrieved using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin) that contain user codes.

Managing facsimile functions using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

You can check information about this machine's fax functions using a computer and save files on a computer using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

🖉 Note

- □ For details about SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and its installation, see *Printer Reference*.
- □ For details, see *Network Guide* and SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

.

Editing Fax Cover Sheets

LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor allows you to edit the format for fax cover sheets. It is necessary to create a cover sheet file before attaching a cover sheet to fax document using LAN-Fax Driver.

Creating a cover sheet

Use the following procedure to create a fax cover sheet.

You can edit the following items using LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor.

- Company name as destination info.
- Department name as destination info.
- Person name as destination info.
- Company name as sender info.
- Department name as sender info.
- Person name as sender info.
- Telephone number as sender info.
- Fax number as sender info.
- Date
- Message

🔗 Note

Cover sheet data is stored in its own format (using "fcp" as its extension)

On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs], [LAN-Fax Utilities], and then click [LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor].

The **[LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor]** dialog box appears.

2 Edit the cover sheet.

🔗 Note

For details about operations, see Help.

Click [Save as...] on the [File] menu.

4 Select a folder, and then enter a file name.

Click [Save].

Attaching a created cover sheet

Use the following procedure to attach a created cover sheet file to a fax document.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

2 Select [LAN-Fax M7] in the [Name:] list, and then click [OK].

The **[LAN-Fax]** dialog box appears.

Click [Edit Cover Sheet...].

The [Cover Sheet] dialog box appears.

Select a cover sheet file from the drop-down list or after clicking [Browse...] in [Select Cover Sheet].

🖉 Note

□ The selection made in **[Select Cover Sheet]** is not canceled unless you select another file. If you want to change only destination information, omit this step and proceed to step **5**.

5 Select the type of information from [To:].

🖉 Note

- You can select [Use Address Book], [To Whom It May Concern], [Edit Names], or [(None)]. Selecting [Edit Names] allows you to enter company, department, and person names.
- **1** To print the date, select the [With a Date] check box.
- **2** Enter the sender information.

🖉 Note

- You can enter company, department, and person names, and telephone and fax numbers.
- □ To add a message, select the **[With a Message]** check box, and then enter a message.

Click [OK].

9 Specify a destination.

Click the [Send Options] tab, and then select the [Attach a Cover Sheet] check box.

Click [Send].

LAN-Fax Operation Messages

Message	Causes and Solutions
Cannot access the print- er. Click [retry] to send the data again.	Check the network connection. Check that the power is turned on.
The number of entries in Destinations exceed the limits. Up to 500 entries can be entered.	The number of destinations specified exceeds the maxi- mum possible. The maximum number of destinations that can be specified at one time is 500.
"LAN-Fax" has already been launched. Cannot launch it again.	The [LAN-Fax] dialog box is already open. Quit LAN-Fax once, and then start it up again.
Failed to allocate memo- ry.	Available memory on the computer is insufficient. Quit applications currently not in use.

Viewing Fax Information Using a Web Browser

The optional printer/scanner unit is required.

You can view received fax documents and their lists or print these documents using a Web Image Monitor on a network computer.

🖉 Note

- It is recommended that you use a Web Image Monitor running under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.
- You need to select "Store" as the "Reception File Setting" in the Facsimile Features menu. See p.195 "Storing or Printing Received Documents".
- You can also check and manage the documents using DeskTop-Binder Lite. See p.139 "Managing Documents Saved in the Document Server from a Computer".

"Using Web Image Monitor", Network Guide

Viewing, Printing, and Deleting Received Fax Documents Using a Web Image Monitor

Use the following procedure to view and/or print received fax documents using a Web Image Monitor.

Viewing received fax documents using a Web browser

- **1** Start a Web browser.
- **2** Enter the machine's IP address in the [Address] field.
- Click [Fax Received File] in the left pane.

With a user code (stored received file) programmed

If you have programmed a user code, enter the code, and then press [OK].

A list of the received fax documents appears.

🖉 Note

If the programmed user code was deleted using the Address Book Management function under System Settings, a message indicating incorrect user code entry appears. If this is the case, reprogram a user code. See p.197 "Setting a User for Viewing Received and Stored Documents".

4 Click the Property icon of the desired fax document.

🖉 Note

- To view a list of the fax documents, select the thumbnail display, detail display, or icon display. Click [Thumbnails], [Details], or [lcons] in the [Display method:] list.
- To download the document data on the list of received fax documents, click [TIFF] or [PDF]. For details about downloading, see the Web Image Monitor Help.

• View the content of the fax document.

🔗 Note

To enlarge the preview image, click [Enlarge Image]. Enlargement cannot be performed without Acrobat Reader installed. For more information, see Help on the Web Image Monitor.

To download the received fax document, click [PDF] or [Multi-page TIFF].

Clicking **[PDF]** causes Acrobat Reader to start and the document to be displayed.

Clicking **[Multi-page TIFF]** causes a downloading confirmation window to appear.

🖉 Note

The method for downloading differs depending on the selected format. For more information, see Help on the Web Image Monitor. Printing fax information using a Web browser

- **1** Start a Web browser.
- **2** Enter the machine's IP address in the [Address] field.
- Click [Fax Received File] in the left pane.

The list of received fax documents appears.

Click and select the check box beside the fax document to be printed.

🖉 Note

□ To view a list of the fax documents, select the thumbnail display, detail display, or icon display. Click [Thumbnails], [Details], or [lcons] in the [Display method:] list.

5 Click [Print].

6 Click [Start Print].

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel printing, press [Cancel] before clicking [Start Print].
- You can change the printing order of selected multiple documents. You can also have documents printed on both sides of the paper. For more information, see Help on the Web Image Monitor.

Click [OK].

The display returns to that of step **2**.

Deleting fax information using a Web browser

1 Start a Web browser.

2 Enter the machine's IP address in the [Address] field.

Click [Fax Received File] in the left pane.

The list of received fax documents appears.

Select the check box of the fax document to be deleted in the [Display method:] list.

🖉 Note

□ To view a list of the fax documents, select the thumbnail display, detail display, or icon display. Click [Thumbnails], [Details], or [lcons] in the [Display method:] list.

5 Click [Delete].

6 Click [Delete File].

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel deletion, press [Cancel] before clicking [Delete File].
- □ After selecting multiple documents, you can also cancel deletion of some of the selected documents. For more information, see Help on the Web Image Monitor.

Click [OK].

The display returns to that of step **4**.

Programming Destination Information from Web Browser

If the receiving machine is compliant with T.37 full mode Internet Fax, you can program the receiver's properties from Web Image Monitor. You can program the following properties:

- Compression type
- Paper size
- Character size

🖉 Note

- □ For a detailed description, see Help for Web Image Monitor.
- When a receiver that is programmed as full mode in the Address Book returns a Reception Notice e-mail, the contents of the newly received e-mail overwrite the existing information.

✓ Reference

p.57 "T.37 Full Mode", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

1 Start the Web browser.

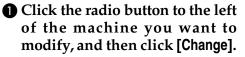
2 Enter the IP address of the machine you want to monitor after "http://" in the address field.

The top screen is displayed.

- E Click [Login], and then enter the Administrator's name and password.
- Click [Address Book] in the left pane. The Address Book is displayed.

5 Set the Internet Fax data format.

To edit machine properties already programmed



The [Change User] page appears.

2 Set the properties for Internet Fax data format other than the mode selection.

🖉 Note

□ If you change the mode to "Simple Mode", you cannot set machine properties.

Click [OK] at the upper-right of the screen.

The Address Book is displayed.

🖉 Note

To cancel the setting, click [Cancel] in the upper-right of the screen.

To add new receiver

Click [Add].

The [Add User] page appears.

Check that [User] is selected in the dropdown menu.

Senter the registration number, name, and e-mail address, then set the necessary properties.

🖉 Note

You can set the Internet Fax data format after entering the e-mail address.

Click [Full Mode] under [Internet Fax Data Format], and set the properties according to the receiver's properties.

🖉 Note

□ If you change the mode to "Simple Mode", you cannot set machine properties. Click [OK] in the upper-right of the screen.

The Address Book is displayed.

🖉 Note

□ To cancel the setting, click **[Cancel]** in the upper-right of the screen.

6 Close the Web browser.

Delivering Files Received by Fax

The optional printer/scanner unit is required.

ScanRouter EX Professional (sold separately) is also required as a delivery server. Desk-TopBinder Lite or DeskTopBinder Professional (sold separately) software must be installed on your computer.

Documents received by the machine can be viewed on or downloaded to a computer with the network delivery server, ScanRouter EX Professional. This is a useful function, enabling you to view and store documents on your computer without printing them.

Using the delivery server, you can eliminate the task of retrieving and delivering documents.

Functions

Delivery server provides the following functions:

- Use the delivery server to associate incoming documents (Confidential ID, SUB Code, Own Name, and Own Fax Number) with receivers, so documents are delivered to the intended receivers.
- You can select the delivery meth-• od for incoming documents: "Save in the delivery server inbox", "Send as an e-mail attachment", or "Save in the designated folder on the computer". Incoming documents with no Confidential ID for ID Override Confidential Transmission, SUB Code, Own Name, or Own Fax Number are saved in the delivery server inbox. You can also set it so that the received documents are stored in the specified delivery server inbox according to the line used for reception.

• You can check or download received documents stored in the delivery server inbox using Desk-TopBinder Lite or DeskTopBinder Professional.

Limitation

Confidential documents are also forwarded to the delivery server.

🖉 Note

- To view or download documents stored in the delivery server inbox, you need to install DeskTopBinder Lite or the separately sold DeskTop-Binder Professional on your computer.
- To send received documents to your computer as e-mail attachments, you need to have a ScanRouter EX Professional-compatible e-mail program on your computer.
- □ To create a network using the delivery server, settings must be specified in the User Tools of the machine. Settings must also be specified on the delivery server. See "File Transfer", *Network Guide*.
- See ScanRouter EX Professional Help or instructions for more information about the delivery server (ScanRouter EX Professional).
- For information about DeskTop-Binder, see DeskTopBinder's manual and Help.

7. Simplifying the Operation

Programs

If you regularly send documents to a particular destination or transmit using the same functions, you can save repetitive keypad operations by registering this information in a Keystroke Program.

Registering and Changing Keystroke Programs

Keystroke Programs can be recalled by just pressing a Destination key. The following procedure can be used to program a new Keystroke Program or overwrite an old one.

You can register the following items in Keystroke Programs:

- Memory Transmission, Internet Fax transmission, Immediate Transmission, destinations (up to 500 numbers), Resolution, Original Type, Select Line (only when a destination is specified using number keys), Stamp, Send Later, Confidential TX, Auto Image Density, Manual Image Density, Scan Area, Mixed Original Sizes, Auto Document, Book Fax, Polling TX, Polling RX, Transfer Req., 2 Sided Original, Enter Text, Recept. Notice, BCC TX, Protocol, Store File, Options
- Program name (up to 20 characters)

Limitation

Destinations and polling transmission cannot be registered in program No.1 as Keystroke Programs.

🖉 Note

- □ The maximum number of programs you can register is 100.
- Use the same procedure to register and change programs. In step **B**, select the program number you want to change.
- The method of registering or changing programs for the copy function is different from that of the fax function.
- **1** Make the settings you want to register in the program.

🖉 Note

- The procedure for programming differs depending on the items you want to register.
- □ Press the **[Clear Modes]** key to cancel programming.

Example of registering a program using Send Later with the fax number "0123456789"

- Press [0], [1], [2], [3], [4], [5], [6], [7], [8], [9] using the number keys.
- 2 Continue doing the Send Later setting until the standby screen appears when you press [OK].

Reference

p.3 "Sending at a Specific Time (Send Later)"

2 Make sure that the machine is in facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

E Press the [Program] key.



A Make sure that [Register] is selected.

Progra Select	·····	<) Im No. to register.					
	1	* Not Stored		2	★ Not Stored		
	4	* Not Stored		5	* Not Stored		
	7	* Not Stored		8	★ Not Stored		
	10	* Not Stored		11	★ Not Stored		
	13	* Not Stored		14	★ Not Stored		
<u>.</u>	÷	Recall	🔶 Reg	ister	Change Nam	e	

• Select a program number in which "*Not Stored" is shown.

Program (Fax) Select program No. to register.			
1 * Not Stored	2	* Not Stored	
4 * Not Stored	5	* Not Stored	
7 * Not Stored	8	* Not Stored	
10 * Not Stored	1	* Not Stored	
13 * Not Stored	14	₩ Not Stored	
↔ Recall	♦ Register	Change Name	

🖉 Note

- If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] and select a program number again.
- When you change a Keystroke Program, press [Register] after pressing the program number you want to change. If you make a mistake, press [Do not Register] and return to step].

Enter the program name, and then press [OK].

The standby display appears.

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Back-space] or [Delete All], and then try again.
- □ You should register the program name.
- □ To cancel a program, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step **5**.

Reference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

Registering a priority function using a program

You can select whether or not the function registered in program No. 1 is set after the power is turned on or the [Clear Modes] key is pressed.

After registering a function in program No. 1, select **[Program No.1]** for **[Change Initial Mode]** on the Facsimile Features menu. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Limitation

Destinations and polling transmission cannot be registered in program No.1 as Keystroke Programs.

🖉 Note

□ To store fax documents in the Document Server each time you send a fax, register **[Store & Transmit]** for Store File in program No.1, and then set the values registered in program No.1 to be used as the initial settings after power on or if the **[Clear Modes]** key is pressed.

Changing a program name

1 Make sure that the machine is in facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [Program] key.



Press [Change Name].

 Program (Fax) Select program No. to recall.							
⇒ 1	TIME SETTING		2	* Not Stored			
4	* Nol Sloved		5	* Nol Soned			
ĩ	*Noi Siones		\$	* Not Stored			
18	* Not Stored		11	* Nol Hered			
13	*Noi Siores		14	*Noi Sonoi			
÷	> Recall	🚸 Regi:	ster	Change Name			

Select the program number of the name you want to change.

Program (Fa Select progr	x) am No. to change the nam	ie of.						
♦ 1	TIME SETTING	2	* Not Honed					
4	* Nol Slored	5	* Not Stored					
Ĩ	*No Stored	\$	* Nol Stored					
18	* Not Stored	11	* Not Stored					
13	* Not Stored	14	* Nol Stored					
÷	↔ Recall ↔ Register Change Name							

Enter a new program name, and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

□ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel the change, and proceed to step **[**.

6 Press [Exit].

The standby display appears.

Deleting a Program

1 Make sure that the machine is in facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.





B Press [Delete].

* Nel Stored	3	*Nol Hored	
* Noi Stored	ő	* Not Stored	
* Nel Hend	ş	* Nol Hored	1/7
* Not Stored		* Nol Stored	🛦 Frev.
* Nol Slored	15	* Nol Stored	▼ Next

Select the program number you want to delete.

Program (Fa Select progra	K) am key to delete.				
♦ 1	TIME SETTING		2	*No Serie	
4	*Noi Siones		5	*Nol Stored	
Ŷ	* Nol Stores		8	* Nol Vored	
ţö.	* Not Stored		11	*No Voro	
13	* Not Stored		14	* Not Stored	
(+	Recall	↔ Regist	ter	Change Name	

5 Press [Yes].

🖉 Note

Press [No] not to delete the program. The display returns to that of step].

6 Press [Exit].

The standby display appears.

Using a Program

🖉 Note

- □ Using the program causes the previous settings to be cleared.
- If you have no programmed destinations or scan settings as programs, select the program number, and then enter the fax number of the destination and select the scan settings you require.

1 Make sure that the machine is in facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Place the original.

B Press the [Program] key.



Confirm that [Recall] is selected, and press the registered program number.

 ram (Fa: ct progra	K) am No. to recall.				
	TIME SETTING		2	*Not Stored	
4	* Not Stored		5	* Nol Honed	
î	*Nol Stored		\$	*No Sono	
1ë	* Not Stored		\$\$	* Nol Gone	
13	* Not Stored		14	* Not Stored	
÷	Recall	🔶 Reg	ister	Change Name	

The standby display appears.

Then, the programmed fax number is shown. Transmission Mode is selected.

5 Press the **[Start]** key.

The fax number and specified time are shown on the display, and the machine starts to scan the original.

Transmission starts at the specified time.

Using the Document Server

The Document Server can store documents from various applications.

The documents that are stored using the facsimile function are available to transmit by facsimile.

Storing in the Document Server enables the following:

- Once stored, a document can be sent out as many times as you want, just by selecting it.
- Storing a document does not use facsimile memory.

You can send and print multiple stored documents as a single document, and also send them with scanned originals at the same time. Follow the instructions under **[Select Stored File]** in **[Sub TX Mode]** when sending or printing stored documents. See p.68 "Sending a Stored File".

₽ Reference

"What You Can Do with This Machine", *General Settings Guide*

∰Important

Data stored in the machine can be lost if there is an error on the machine's hard disk. The manufacturer is not responsible for any damage that might result from the loss of data.

- Stored documents are not deleted even if there is a power failure, or the main power switch is turned off.
- □ You can specify whether or not the machine automatically deletes documents from the Document Server after a certain number of days. The delete function is preconfigured with the software and automatically deletes any stored document that is more than three days (72 hours) old. You can change this setting using "Auto Delete File" under "System Settings". See "Administrator Tools Auto Delete File in Document Server", *General Settings Guide*.
- You can store approximately 9,000 pages (ITU-T No.4 chart) in the Document Server, using the copy, facsimile, printer, and scanner functions.
- □ The Document Server has a memory capacity of 3,000 documents maximum.
- □ You can store up to 1,000 pages per document.
- You cannot check received and stored documents through the Document Server. See p.34 "Printing Received and Stored Documents".

Storing a Document

You can store and send a document at the same time. You can also just store a document.

File names

Scanned documents are automatically assigned names like "FAX0001" or "FAX0002". See p.135 "Setting a file name".

User Names

You can set this function if necessary to know who and what departments stored documents in the machine. See p.135 "Programming a user name".

Password

You can set this function so as not to send to unspecified people. See p.135 "Setting a password".

🖉 Note

You can change file names and user names. See p.136 "Changing Stored Document Information".

Make sure that the machine is in facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

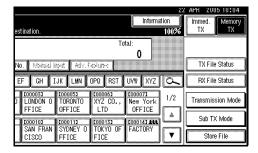
2 Place the original, and then select the scan settings you require.

✓ Reference

p.11 "Placing Originals", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

p.30 "Scan Settings", Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>

Press [Store File].



Select [Store & Transmit] or [Store only]. Select [Store & Transmit] to send documents after they are stored. Select [Store only] to store documents.

			Informa	tion 🛔	APK 2005 10:04 Inned. Memory TX TX
No. Marrai I	nyud 🛛 Adv. F	astura I			Store File Store & Transmit
EF GH I COOOO33 D LONDON O FFICE	JK LMN TORONTO OFFICE	0PQ RST <u>0000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	UVW XYZ 1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2	Store only FAX0012
COOO103 SAN FRAN CISCO	COODII3 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>COOO133</u> TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 288 FACTORY		File Info. Setting

🖉 Note

- □ When [Store only] is selected, "★★★★★★★★★★★★★★ is shown.
- **5** Press [File Info. Setting], and then set the user name, file name, and password as necessary.

			Informa		APK 2005 10:05 Inned. Memory IX TX
No. Marial I	port Adv. F	To	·····		Store File Store & Transmit
EF GH I COODOSS LONDON O FFICE	JK LMN 1000053 TORONTO OFFICE	0PQ RST <u> 1000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	UVW XYZ <u>COOOO73</u> New York OFFICE	1/2	FAX0012
SAN FRAN CISCO	COODIII SYDNEY O FFICE	COODI33 TOKYO OF FICE	1000143 244 FACTORY		File Info. Setting

🔗 Note

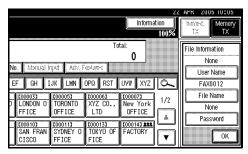
- If you are not setting a user name, file name, or password, proceed to step 6.
- □ You cannot change multiple documents at once.

Programming a user name

🖉 Note

Set a user name from those programmed in the user code. User code is programmed in System Settings. See "Registering a New User Code", General Settings Guide.

Press [User Name].



Press the user name to be programmed, and then press [OK].

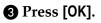
Change User Name			Cle
Freq. AB	B CD EF	GH IJK	LMN
ABC COMPANY	BERLIN OFFICE	LONDON OFFICE	NEW YORK
XYZ CO., LTD	New York OFFICE	PARIS OFFICE	DETROIT
SYDNEY OFFICE	LOS ANGELES FACT	TOKYO OFFICE	FAC1
ABC NET	Jones	Finland	
Switch Title			

🖉 Note

- □ Press the title key to switch between titles.
- □ To set a non-programmed user name, press [Non-programmed Name], and then enter the name. User names entered by pressing [Non-programmed Name] are not programmed into the user code.

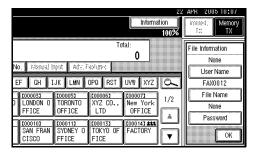
✓ Reference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide



Setting a file name

Press [File Name].



2 Enter the file name, and then press [OK].

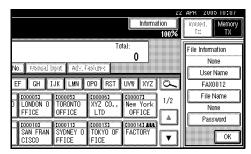
PReference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

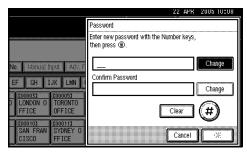
3 Press [OK].

Setting a password

Press [Password].



2 Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [#].



🔗 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [≇], and then reenter your password.
- □ You can enter up to four to eight digits.

3 Enter the password again, and then press [♥].

4 Press [OK].

Note

Press [Change] to enter a different password.

6 Press [OK].

6 Press [OK].

If you have selected [Store & Transmit], specify the receiver.

🖉 Note

□ If you have selected **[Store only]**, proceed to step **③**.

Press the [Start] key.

Changing Stored Document Information

You can change the file name, user name, and password of stored documents.

To change a stored document, delete the document you no longer need, and then reprogram the new document. See p.138 "Deleting a Stored Document".

🖉 Note

- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **1**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- Press [Sub TX Mode].

				23	2 APK 2005 10:08
estination.			Informa		Immed. Memory TX TX
		To	tal: O		
No. Manual I	nput 🛛 Adv. F	adures 👘			TX File Status
EF GH I		OPQ RST	UVWXXYZ	<u>6</u>	RX File Status
0000033 1 LONDON 0	TORONTO	<u>1000061</u> XYZ CO.,	1000071 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
[00010]	2000113	1000133	0000143 ###		Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN CISCO	SYDNEY O FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼	Store File

2 Select [Select Stored File].

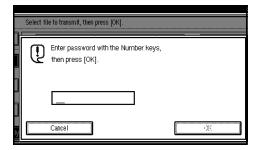
Select [Manage / Delete File], and then press the document to be changed.

	Select file to transmit, the	n press [OK].		
	User Name	File Name	Date Pag	le I X (ader
i internet	LONDON OFFICE	FAX0002	22Apr.	1
; prome	BERLIN OFFICE	FAX0001	22 Apr.	1
قير				▲ Frev.
				₩ Ned
ly	🖞 Origi. + Stored File	Stored file + 🖞	Origi. 📔 Manage	/ Delete File

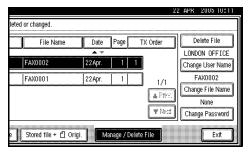
136

If you select a document for which a password is set, enter the password, and then press [OK].

When a selected file does not have a password, proceed to step **5**.



5 Change the desired information of the stored document.



Changing a user name

Press [Change User Name].

2 Press [Clear].

The user name is deleted.

LONDO	N OFFICE	Clear	Nor
AB CD EF	GH IJK	LMN OPQ	RST
BERLIN OFFICE	LONDON OFFICE	NEW YORK OFFICE	TORONTO C
New York OFFICE	PARIS OFFICE	DETROIT FACTORY	SAN FRANCI
LOS ANGELES FACT	TOKYO OFFICE	FACTORY	KUMAMOTO
Jones	Finland		
			C

3 Enter the new user name, and then press [OK].

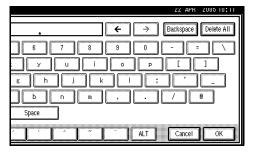
🔗 Note

- Press the title word keys to switch between titles.
- To set a non-programmed user name, press [Non-programmed Name], and then enter the name.
- User names entered by pressing [Non-programmed Name] are not programmed into the user code.

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

Changing the file name

- Press [Change File Name].
- Press [Backspace] or [Delete All], and then re-enter the file name.



Reference

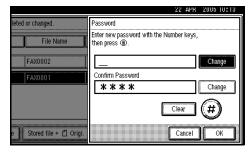
"Entering Text" General Settings Guide

3 Press [OK].

Changing the password

- Press [Change Password].
- **2** Press upper [Change].

3 Enter a new password using the number keys, and then press [#].



Press lower [Change].

- 6 Enter the password again, and then press [⑦].
- 6 Press [OK].
- **6** Press [Exit].

Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

Deleting a Stored Document

Use this function to delete stored documents.

🖉 Note

 You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. Using the key allows you to omit step **1**. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".

Press [Sub TX Mode].

			22	APR 200510:13
estination.		Informati	on 100%	Immed. Memory TX TX
	Tot	al: O		
No. Markal light Adv. F	isium:			TX File Status
EF GH IJK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ	٥.,	RX File Status
C000033 C000053 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C00055 C	<u>1000061</u> XYZ CO.,	1000073 New York OFFICE	1/2	Transmission Mode
[00010] [00011]	LID [000133	1000143 488		Sub TX Mode
SAN FRAN SYDNEY O CISCO FFICE	TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY	▼	Store File

2 Press [Select Stored File].

B Press [Manage / Delete File].

-	User Name	File Name	Date	Page 🗌	ĭ≍ (nder
			A W		
	LONDON OFFICE	FAX0002	22 Apr.	1	
	10 BERLIN OFFICE	FAX0001	22Apr.	1	1/1
3					🛦 Frev.
-					₩Net

4 Select the document you want to delete.

	User Name	File Name	Date		i X (nder
			• •		-
🖬 L0	NDON OFFICE	FAX0002	22Apr.	1	
					1
10 BE	RLIN OFFICE	FAX0001	22Apr.] 1/
					L

🖉 Note

□ You can also delete multiple documents at once.

With a programmed password

Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].

	Select fil	e.	
	Ū	Enter password with the Number keys, then press [OK].	
iii Iy		Cancel	: <u>Ж</u>

5 Press [Delete File].

6 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ If you do not want to delete the document, press **[Do not Delete]**.

2 Press [Exit].

Press [OK].

The standby display appears.

Managing Documents Saved in the Document Server from a Computer

The optional printer/scanner unit is required.

🖉 Note

It is recommended that you use a Web Image Monitor running under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.

Using DeskTopBinder

Fax documents saved in the Document Server can be viewed and controlled from a network computer with DeskTopBinder installed.

The following operations are available using the computer:

- Displaying documents (Easy Viewer)
- Displaying document properties (Properties)
- Deleting documents (Delete)
- Copying documents to a computer (Copy)
- Printing documents (Print from Document Server)
- Exporting documents as files (Export Document)
- Importing documents into a computer (Import Document)

For more information, see DeskTop-Binder's manual and Help.

Limitation

If you use a link in Auto Document Link the versions earlier than DeskTopBinder Lite or Professional version 4.0.0.0., set the SNTP Server Address as "0.0.0.0" on Web Image Monitor. If the address is not set correctly, documents cannot be properly imported. For details about import settings, see Help for Web Image Monitor.

🖉 Note

When you send a document using the fax, if the registration number in the Address Book registered to the machine is specified, you can send the document to a fax number only. Documents cannot be sent even if e-mail and IP-Fax addresses are already registered.

Using a Web browser

Fax documents saved in the Document Server can be viewed using a Web Image Monitor on a network computer. These fax documents can also be downloaded to the computer's hard disk. See p.123 "Viewing Fax Information Using a Web Browser".

8. Facsimile Features

Function List

The User Tools allow you to program your identification, store frequently used numbers and settings, and customize default settings to meet your needs.

The User Tools are grouped by functions so that you can quickly and easily find the desired User Tool.

General Settings/Adjustment

Description	Reference
Default Transmission Mode and scan set- tings. When the power is turned on, settings specified here are selected:	p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment"
Memory / Immed. Transmission Switch	
Text Size Priority	
Original Type Priority	
Auto Image Density	
Adjust Scan Density	
Select Title	
Change Initial Mode	
Adjust Sound Volume	p.87 "Adjusting the Volume", <i>Facsimile Refer-</i> ence <basic features=""></basic>
Program Fax Information	p.79 "Initial Settings and Adjustments", <i>Fac-simile Reference <basic features=""></basic></i>
Scan End Reset	
TX Stamp Priority	
Line Priority Setting	
Program Economy Time	
On Hook Mode Release Time	
Quick Operation Key	

✤ Reception Settings

Description	Reference
Allows you to switch the following reception functions on or off:	p.147 "Reception Settings"
Switch Reception Mode	
Authorized RX	p.176 "Authorized RX (Authorized Reception)"
• Forwarding	p.176 "Forwarding"
RX File Print Qty	p.177 "Reception File Print Qty"
• 2 Sided Print	p.98 "Two-Sided Printing"
RX Reverse Printing	p.102 "Reverse Order Printing"
Paper Tray	p.178 "Paper Tray"
Specify Tray for Lines	p.106 "Specifying Tray for Lines"
Checkered Mark	p.97 "Checkered Mark"
Centre Mark	p.97 "Centre Mark"
Print Reception Time	p.98 "Reception Time"

E-mail Settings

Description	Reference
Internet Fax Settings	p.148 "E-mail Settings"
• Max. E-mail Size	
SMTP RX File Delivery Settings	

✤ IP-Fax Settings

Description	Reference
• Enable H.323	p.150 "IP-Fax Settings"
Enable SIP	
• H.323 Settings	
SIP Settings	
Program / Change / Delete Gateway	

* Administrator Tools

Description	Reference
Program / Change / Delete Standard Message	p.155 "Administrator Setting"
• Store / Change / Delete Auto Document	
Program / Change / Delete Scan Size	
Print Journal	
Transmission Page Count	
• Forwarding	
Memory Lock RX	
• ECM	
Parameter Setting	
Program Special Sender	
Box Setting	
Transfer Report	
Program Confidential ID	
Program Polling ID	
Program Memory Lock ID	
Select Dial / Push Phone	
Reception File Setting	
Stored RX File User Setting	
Menu Protection Settings	
Folder Transfer Result Report	

Displays

•

- Each menu appears in each tab.
- You can switch the display by pressing [▲Prev.] or [▼Next].
- The selected item is highlighted.
- When you have made all required settings, press **[OK]**. If **[OK]** is not pressed, the new settings might be canceled.

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

• Press [Cancel] to cancel the new settings. The previous display appears.

Accessing User Tools (Facsimile Features)

Customize the facsimile settings according to the operations to be frequently performed.

🖉 Note

- □ The machine allows you to change the facsimile defaults in a mode that is not the facsimile mode. After changing the defaults, select facsimile mode again. This section describes the facsimile defaults that the machine allows you to customize.
- Customized facsimile defaults are kept until the defaults are changed again. The new settings are not canceled by turning off the main power switch or the operation switch, or pressing the [Clear Modes] key.

✓ Reference

For the items that can be changed using System Settings, see "User Tools (System Settings)", *General Settings Guide*.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The User Tools main menu appears.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

The Facsimile Features menu appears.

Select the item that you want to change.

The corresponding setting display appears.

Reference

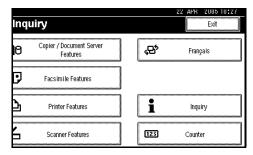
p.141 "Function List"

- Follow the displayed instructions to change the default, and then press [OK].
 - 🖉 Note
 - □ If you make a mistake, press [Cancel].

Quitting Default Settings

After changing the defaults, press [Exit] on the User Tools main menu.

The standby display appears.



🖉 Note

□ You can also press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key to quit the User Tools main menu.

General Settings/Adjustment

Memory / Immed. Transmission Switch Use this function to specify the Transmission Mode for document transmission.

- Memory Transmission
- Immediate Transmission

Text Size Priority

Use this function to specify the character size of your originals for scanning.

- Standard
- Detail
- Super Fine (expansion memory required)

Original Type Priority

Use this function to specify the type of originals for scanning.

- Text
- Text / Photo
- Photo

✤ Auto Image Density

Use this function to prioritize automatic Image Density for scanning your originals.

- On
- Off

Adjust Scan Density

Use this function to specify the scan density of your originals.

Select Title

Use this function for selecting the title to be shown on the destination list.

- Title 1
- Title 2
- Title 3

Change Initial Mode

Use this function to select whether contents registered in program No.1 are to be used as the initial settings after the power is turned on or the **[Clear Modes]** key is pressed:

- Standard
- Program No.1

🖉 Note

You cannot select Program No.1 if program No.1 has not been programmed with priority functions.

Adjust Sound Volume

Use this function to adjust the sound volume during On Hook Mode and Immediate Transmission.

See p.87 "Adjusting the Volume", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

- On Hook Mode
- At Transmission
- At Reception
- At Dialing
- At Printing

Program Fax Information

See p.79 "Initial Settings and Adjustments", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

- Fax Header
- Own Name
- Own Fax Number

Scan End Reset

Use this function to return to the initial settings each time an original is scanned.

- On
- Off

8

TX Stamp Priority

Use this function to press a TX stamp.

- On
- Off

Line Priority Setting

Use this function to specify the line to be used.

🖉 Note

□ The display may differ depending on the line type you have.

Program Economy Time

Use this function for specifying a time for transmission when call charges are low. See p.3 "Sending at a Specific Time (Send Later)".

Limitation

You can program only one Economy Time.

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

On Hook Mode Release Time

Use this function to specify a time to cancel On Hook mode after you transmit using On Hook dialing.

- 1 minute
- 3 minutes
- 5 minutes
- 10 minutes

Quick Operation Key

Frequently used functions programmed as Quick Operation keys are shown on the menu immediately after the power is turned on. The Quick Operation keys can be programmed with the following functions:

- Journal
- TX File Status (Transmission File Status)
- Print Conf. RX (Print Confidential Reception)
- Print Memory Lock
- Stored File
- Send Later
- Auto Document
- 2 Sided Original
- Closed Network
- Polling TX (Polling Transmission)
- Polling RX (Polling Reception)
- Fax Header Print
- Label Insertion
- RX File Status (Reception File Status)
- Forwarding
- Transfer Request
- Switch RX Mode (Reception Mode Switch)
- Manual E-mail RX (when the Internet Fax is set to ON.)
- TX Status Report (Transmission Status Report)
- Sender Settings
- E-mail TX Results (E-mail Transmission Results)

Up to three functions can be programmed to a Quick Operation keys. Select the Quick Operation Key you want to program.

2 Select the function you want to program to the Quick Operation Key.

Quick Operation Key 1			
Select item to program.			
Journal	ix File Status	Print Conf. RX	Print Memo
Send Later		Auto Document	2 Sided Or
Polling TX	Polling RX	Fax Header Print	Label Ins
Forwarding	Transfer Request	Switch RX Mode	
TX Status Report	Sender Settings	E-mail TX Results	

🖉 Note

□ Functions that appear dimmed have already been set.

Reception Settings

Switch Reception Mode

Specify the method for receiving fax documents.

- Manual Reception
- Auto Reception
- Authorized RX (Authorized Reception)

Specify whether or not unwanted fax documents are to be screened out.

- On
- Off

Forwarding

Specify whether or not received fax documents are to be forwarded to a programmed receiver.

- On
- Off

RX File Print Qty (Reception File Print Quantity)

Specify the number of copies to be printed for each fax document received.

• 1 to 10 set(s)

2 Sided Print

Specify whether or not received fax documents are to be printed on both sides of the paper.

- On
- Off

RX Reverse Printing (Reception Reverse Printing)

Specify whether or not received fax documents are to be printed from the last page received.

- On
- Off

Paper Tray

Use this function to print fax documents received from programmed senders and fax documents from other senders, using different paper trays. See p.175 "Paper Tray". Display of tray names may differ depending on the options installed.

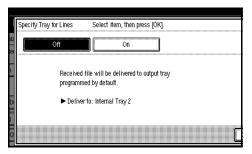
- Tray 1
- Tray 2
- Tray 3 (option)
- Tray 4 (option)
- Auto Select
- LCT (option)

147

Specify Tray for Lines

Specify a paper tray for each line (telephone, Internet Fax, IP-Fax).

- On
- Off
- ① Select **[On]** to select a paper tray.



🖉 Note

- □ If you select **[Off]**, the received fax is delivered to a default tray.
- ② Select the line type.

Specify	Tray for Lines	Select it	em, then j	press [OK].
	Off		On	
	Deliver1	o: Line 1		Internal Tray 1
	Delivert	o: E-mail		Internal Tray 1
	Delivert	o: IP-Fax		Internal Tray 1

③ Select a tray to deliver the received paper onto, and then press **[OK]**.

ī	Deliverto: Line 1	
	Select item, then press [OK].	
2	Internal Tray 1	Finisher Shift
	Internal Tray 2	Finisher Shift
	5	
1 8		
× 1 8		li i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i

🔗 Note

If you want to specify another line type, repeat from step
 2.

Checkered Mark

Specify whether or not a checkered mark is to be printed on the first page of received fax documents.

- On
- Off

Centre Mark

Specify whether or not a centre mark is to be printed halfway down the left side and at the top centre of each page received.

- On
- Off

Print Reception Time

Specify whether or not the received date, time, and file number are printed at the bottom of received fax documents.

- On
- Off

E-mail Settings

Internet Fax Settings

You can select to display ****** or not. When you want to send an Internet Fax, set ON to display the icon.

- On
- Off

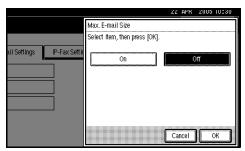
Max. E-mail Size

Make this setting when you want to limit the size of e-mail messages that are transmitted, if receivers limit e-mail size, or you cannot send large size e-mail for some reason. When this function is set to on, transmission of e-mail that exceeds the set size is aborted.

- On
- Off

🖉 Note

- □ When e-mail exceeds the maximum file size, an Error Report is output, and the e-mail is deleted.
- Even when e-mail does not exceed the size limit, it may be rejected if it does not meet the requirements of the server settings.
- ① Press **[On]**.



② Enter the maximum e-mail size using the number keys.

	22 APK 2005 10:30
	Max. E-mail Size
	Enter size with the Number keys, then press [OK].
ail SettingsIP-Fax Settir	On Off
	КВ
	<64 - 102400≻
	Clear
	Cancel 🕂

🖉 Note

- □ Maximum e-mail size can be between 64 and 102,400 KB.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then enter again.
- 3 Press **[OK]**.
- SMTP RX File Delivery Settings (SMTP Reception File Delivery Settings)

This function is available on systems that allow routing of e-mail received via SMTP. See p.94 "Routing e-mail received via SMTP".

- On
- Off

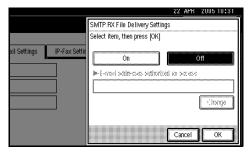
When an authorized e-mail address is set, e-mail received from addresses that do not match the authorized address is discarded, and an error message is returned to the SMTP server.

The authorized e-mail address is compared with the addresses of email originators, as illustrated by the following examples.

When the authorized e-mail address is set to "@aaa.abcd.com": abc@aaa.abcd.com - accepted def@aaa.xyz.com - not accepted abc@abcd.com - not accepted

🔗 Note

- □ No Error Report is output even when e-mail is discarded.
- ① Press **[On]**.



② Press [Change], and then enter the sending e-mail address with transmission permission.

22 APK 2005 10:31 SMTP RX File Delivery Settings Select item, then press [OK] On Off E-mail addresses authorized for access Change Change Cancel OK

🖉 Note

- If you make a mistake, press [Backspace] or [Delete All], and then enter again.
- ③ Press **[OK]** twice.

IP-Fax Settings

Make settings to use IP-Fax.

Set H.323 for the gatekeeper, SIP for SIP server, and gateway for gateway access if necessary. Check the settings of the network to which this machine is connected before making settings.

🖉 Note

- The following characters can be used for registration of the alias telephone number in H.323 Setting. Make sure you enter these characters correctly:
 - Numbers
 - Symbols (# and *)
- The following characters can be used for registration of the SIP User Name in SIP Settings. Make sure you enter these characters correctly:
 - Alphanumeric symbols (lower and upper cases)
 - The 21 symbols in the following table.

;	?	•	&	=
+	\$,	-	-
	!	2	*	#
1	()	%	/
@				

Use numbers and periods (".") to enter the correct IP addresses for the gatekeeper, SIP server, and gateway. You can get the correct IP addresses from the network administrator.

Enable H.323

Specify whether or not H.323 is used for IP-Fax transmission.

- On
- Off

Enable SIP

Specify whether or not SIP is used for IP-Fax transmission.

- On
- Off

H.323 Settings

Set the IP address and alias telephone number of the gatekeeper. For details, see p.151 "Configuring the H.323 gatekeeper".

- Gatekeeper Address (Main)
- Gatekeeper Address (Sub)
- Own Fax No.

SIP Settings

Set the SIP server's IP address and SIP user name. For details, see p.151 "Configuring the SIP server".

- Proxy Server Addr. (Main)
- Proxy Server Address (Sub)
- Redirect Svr. Addr. (Main)
- Redirect Svr. Addr. (Sub)
- Registrar Address (Main)
- Registrar Address (Sub)
- SIP User Name

Program / Change / Delete Gateway

Register, change, or delete the gateway used for transmission to IP-Fax. For details, see p.152 "Registering or changing a gateway" and p.153 "Deleting a gateway".

- Program / Change (Prefix, Select Protocol, Gateway Address)
- Delete

Configuring the H.323 gatekeeper

🖉 Note

□ If you select "On" using the User Parameters, you can use the gatekeeper server. See p.167 "User Parameters"(switch 34, bit 0).

Press [H.323 Settings].

() Facsimile Features	;	
Select one of following default settings.		
Gen. Settings/Adjust Reception Settings	E-mail Settings	IP-Fax Settings
Enable H.323	On	
Enable SIP	On	
H.323 Settings		
SIP Settings		
Program / Change / Delete (Gateway	

2 Press [Change] for each property.

	APK	2005	10:31
		Char Char	<u> </u>
_	٦٢	Char	ige
			ж 🕽

Enter the IP address and alias telephone number and press [OK].

The screen returns to that of step **2**.

	22 APK 2005 10:32
.168.1.10	Change
168.1.20	Change
2345678	Change
	Cancel

Press [OK].

Configuring the SIP server

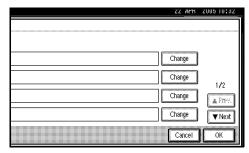
Note 🖉

If you select "On" using the User Parameters, you can use the SIP server. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 34, bit 1).

Press [SIP Settings].

🕞 Facsimile Feature	25
Select one of following default settings.	
Gen. Settings/Adjust Reception Setting	s E-mail Settings IP-Fax Settings
Enable H.323	On
Enable SIP	On
H.323 Settings	
SIP Settings	
Program / Change / Dele	ie Gateway

2 Press [Change] for each property.

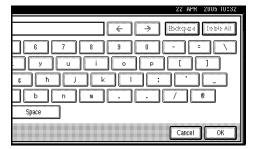


🖉 Note

- □ A proxy server relays call requests and responses.
- A redirect server processes request destination inquiries.
- A register server registers location information of user agents (which correspond to telephones or facsimiles on public telephone lines) on an IP network.

Enter the IP address and SIP user name, and then press [OK].

The screen returns to that of step **2**.



Press [OK].

Registering or changing a gateway

Press [Program / Change / Delete Gateway].

Select one of following (lefault settings.		
Gen. Settings/Adjust	Reception Settings	E-mail Settings	IP-Fax Settings
Enable H	.323	On	
Enable	SIP	On	
H.323 Se	tings		
SIP Set	ings		
Progr	ım / Change / Delete (Gateway	

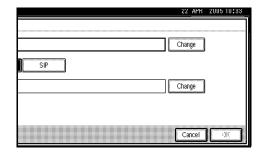
2 Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

B Press a gateway to register.

Pn	ogram / Ch	ange / Delete Gateway				
Se	lect Gatev	vay to program or change.	 			
	1	* Not Programmed	2	*	Not	Progr
	3	* Not Programmed	4	*	Not	Progr
	5	* Not Programmed	6	*	Not	Progr
	7	* Not Programmed	8	*	Not	Progr
	9	* Not Programmed	10	*	Not	Progr
	Program	/Change Delete				

When registering a new gateway, press [*Not Programmed].

Press [Change] for [Prefix].

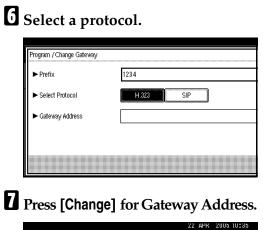


Enter the Prefix using the number keys, and then press [OK].

22 <u>APF</u>	X 2005-10:34
ાં હતુ	
SIP	
Cancel	Т ж

🔗 Note

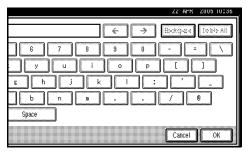
- To change the existing prefix, press [Clear], and then enter a new prefix.
- □ For documents sent using a gateway to G3 Fax, prefixes can be used. If the first several digits of IP-Fax number and the gateway-specific prefix are identical, documents can be transmitted using the registered digits of the gateway. For example, if both 03 and 04 have been registered as gateway number while 0312345678 is also specified, documents can be transmitted via a gateway for which 03 is used as a prefix.
- When you wish to use the gateways regardless of the IP-Fax destination numbers, register only the gateway addresses without registering the prefix.



Change Change Change Change Change Change

Enter the gateway address, and then press [OK].

The screen returns to that of step **2**.



Press [OK].

Deleting a gateway

Press [Program / Change / Delete Gateway].

elect one of following d	lefault settings.		
Gen. Settings/Adjust	Reception Settings	E-mail Settings	IP-Fax Settings
Enable H	.323	On	
Enable SIP		On	
H.323 Se	tings		
SIP Sett	inas		

2 Press [Delete], and then select a gateway to delete.

	hange / Delete Gateway		
Select Gate	way to program or change.		
1	1234(192.168.0.1)	2	* Not Progr
3	* Not Programmed	4	* Not Progr
5	* Not Programmed	6	* Not Progr
7	* Not Programmed	8	* Not Progr
9	* Not Programmed	10	* Not Progr
Program	/Change Delete		

Press [Delete] on the confirmation message.



🖉 Note

- If you do not want to delete the gateway you have selected, press
 [Do not Delete]. The screen returns to that of step 2.
- Press [Exit].

🖉 Note

□ To delete another gateway, repeat steps 2 and 3.

9. Administrator Setting

Administrator Tools List

You can program, change, or delete standard messages and auto documents. You can also set the line type for the machine connection, program various IDs (including a Polling ID), fax destinations, and many other items. In addition, you can check the number of documents transmitted and received.

Function name	Description	Reference
Program / Change / Delete Standard Message	You can program, change, or delete standard messages printed at the top of the first page of each incoming docu- ment.	p.157 "Programming, Chang- ing, and Deleting Standard Messages"
Store / Change / Delete Auto Document	You can program, change, or delete pages stored as auto documents.	p.158 "Storing, Changing, and Deleting an Auto Document"
Program / Change / Delete Scan Size	You can program, change, or cancel frequently used scan sizes.	p.160 "Programming, Chang- ing and Deleting a Scan Size"
Print Journal	Prints a Journal.	p.162 "Printing Journal"
Transmission Page Count	Checks the transmission and reception, and totals on the display.	p.162 "Counters"
Forwarding	Transfers received documents to a programmed receiver (forwarding destination).	p.162 "Forwarding"
Memory Lock RX	Switches the Memory Lock on or off. To use it, program an ID for printing a document re- ceived in Memory Lock mode.	p.165 "Memory Lock"
ECM	If part of the transmission fails due to a telephone line fault, this function resends the failed part automatically.	p.166 "ECM (Error Correction Mode)"
Parameter Setting	Allows you to change and print the function settings to meet your needs.	p.167 "User Parameters"
Program Special Sender	By programming particular receivers as Special Sender in advance, you can have Special Senders treated differently.	p.175 "Programming/Chang- ing Special Senders"

Function name	Description	Reference
Box Setting	By using SUB and SEP Codes with these functions, you can send documents to another party's box, and retrieve docu- ments stored in boxes.	p.181 "Box Settings"
Transfer Report	Before using Transfer Re- quest, you need this Transfer Report setting.	p.192 "Transfer Report"
Program Confidential ID	Registers an ID required for Confidential communication.	p.192 "Programming a Confi- dential ID"
Program Polling ID	Registers an ID required for Polling communication.	p.193 "Programming a Polling ID"
Program Memory Lock ID	Registers an ID required for Memory Lock reception.	p.194 "Programming a Memo- ry Lock ID"
Select Dial / Push Phone	Selects a line type when you connect the machine to a G3 analog line.	p.194 "Selecting Dial/Push Phone"
	NoteThis function is not available in some areas.	
Reception File Setting	Selects whether received doc- uments are saved on the hard disk to be printed later or printed immediately without being saved.	p.195 "Storing or Printing Re- ceived Documents"
Stored RX File User Setting	Set the password to view re- ceived and stored documents using a Web Image Monitor or DeskTopBinder Lite.	p.197 "Setting a User for Viewing Received and Stored Documents"
Menu Protection Settings	Set protection so only the Ad- ministrator can change menu settings.	p.198 "Menu Protection Set- tings"
Folder Transfer Result Report	Set whether the Folder Trans- fer Result Report is transmit- ted to the specified e-mail address when folders are pro- grammed as the forwarding destinations to which docu- ments are sent from all send- ers or Special Senders.	p.198 "Folder Transfer Result Report"

Using Administrator Settings

Programming, Changing, and Deleting Standard Messages

Use this function to program standard messages to be printed at the top of the first page of the original. It is useful for personalizing messages such as sending greetings.

🖉 Note

- You can program three standard messages. You cannot change the "Confidential", "Urgent", "Please phone.", or "Copy to corres. section" messages.
- □ Use the same procedure to program and change your messages.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program / Change / Delete Standard Message].

Programming or changing standard messages

Check [Program / Change] is selected.

	22 APK 2005 10:41
ail Settings	Program / Change / Delete Standard Message Select programmed message to program or change. Prog. Messge 1 HELLO Prog. Messge 2 PLEASE CONFIRM Prog. Messge 3 * Not Programmed
	Program / Change Delete Exit

2 Program or change the message.

Select the message you want to program or change.

3 Enter a new message.

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

4 Press [OK].

- 🔗 Note
- To program another message, repeat the procedure from step 1.
- □ To cancel a registration, press **[Cancel]**.

Deleting Standard Messages

Press [Delete], and then select the message you want to delete.

	:	Z	APR	2005 10:41
	Program / Change / Delete Standard Message			
il Cattings	Select programmed message to delete.			
ail Settings	Prog. Messge 1 HELLO]
	Prog. Messge 2 PLEASE CONFIRM			
	Prog. Elessige 3 * Not Programmes			J
timmin t				
	Program / Change Delete		J	Exit

2 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

- □ To delete another message, repeat from step **①**.
- To cancel a deletion, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step 1.
- **5** Press [Exit].

D Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Storing, Changing, and Deleting an Auto Document

If you often have to send a particular page to people (for example, a map, a standard attachment, or a set of instructions), you can store that page in memory as an Auto Document. This saves rescanning the original every time you want to send it.

Use the following procedure to program a new Auto Document or overwrite an existing one.

You can store the following items in an Auto Document:

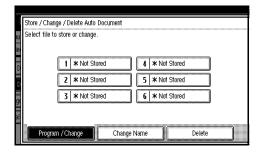
- Originals (6 documents maximum, only one page per file).
- Scan settings (resolution, original type, and image density)
- Irregular scan area
- Document name (16 characters maximum)

Important

When about one hour passes after power to the machine is turned off, all fax documents stored in memory are lost. If any documents have been lost for this reason, a Power Failure Report is automatically printed when the operation switch is turned on. Use this report to identify lost documents. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Store / Change / Delete Auto Document].
- **5** Select and follow the appropriate procedure depending on what you want to perform.



🖉 Note

□ If there are stored files, the file names are shown.

Storing a file

- Check [Program / Change] is selected.
- 2 Select [*Not Stored].
- **3** Enter a file name, and then press [OK].

Reference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

Changing a file

Check [Program / Change] is selected.

2 Select the file you want to change.

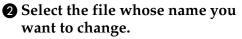
The "A file is already stored. If another file is stored, previous one will be deleted. Is it OK?" message is shown.

3 Press [Store].

If you want to cancel storing, press **[Do not Store]**.

Changing only a file name

Press [Change Name].



Enter a file name, and then press [OK].

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

Proceed to step 3.

Place the original, and then select any scan settings you require.



🖉 Note

□ You can also specify a scan size. See p.13 "Setting a Scan Area", *Facsimile Reference <Basic Features>*.

2 Press the [Start] key.

The machine starts to scan and completes scanning.

🖉 Note

□ To cancel scanning, press [Stop Scanning].

8 Press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key. The standby display appears.

Deleting an Auto Document

🖉 Note

You cannot delete an Auto Document waiting to be transmitted. Delete it after the transmission or cancel the transmission, and then delete the Auto Document.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Store / Change / Delete Auto Document].

D Press [Delete], and then select the file you want to delete.

Ι	Store / Change / Delete Auto Document
au	Select file to store or change.
lei	
D	1 MAP 4 * Not Stored
D	2 * Not Stored 5 * Not Stored
	3 * Not Stored 6 * Not Stored
- 1 Fo	
	Program / Change Change Name Delete
	Frogram, change Change Name Delete

6 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel deleting, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step **5**.

2 Press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Programming, Changing and Deleting a Scan Size

When you select a scan size to scan a custom size original, two custom sizes are available (Program Size 1 and Program Size 2). Use these functions to program a custom size in advance.

To change an existing scan size, just use the same procedure.

∰Important

When programming or changing a scan size, it is recommended that you make a record of the new size.

🖉 Note

- □ You can program up to two sizes.
- □ You can edit boxes in the same way you program them.
- You can specify a horizontal length from 128 to 1200 mm, or from 5.5 to 47 inches.

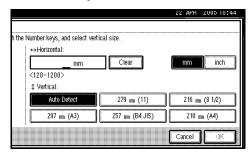
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program / Change / Delete Scan Size].
- Select [Program Size 1] or [Program Size 2].

	ΖZ	APK	2005	10:44
Program / Change / Delete Scan Size				
Select size to program or change.				
Program Size 1 * Not Programmed				
Program Size 2 * Not Programmed				
Program / Change Delete			E	xit
	Select size to program or change. Program Size 1	Program /Change / Delete Scan Size Select size to program or change. Program Size 1 * Not Programmed Program Size 2 * Not Programmed	Program / Change / Delete Scan Size Select size to program or change. Program Size 1 * Not Programmed Program Size 2 * Not Programmed	Select size to program or change. Program Size 1

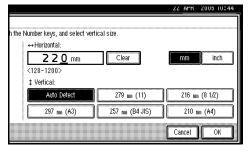
6 Enter a horizontal size using the number keys.



🖉 Note

- Each time you press [mm] or [inch], the units switch between "mm" and "inch". If you enter a length and change the units by pressing [mm] or [inch], the length is converted automatically according to the unit (fractions are rounded off). For example, when you enter [2], [2], and [0] in millimeters and change to "inch", the length "8.7 inch" is shown on the display. If you press [mm] or [inch] again, "221 mm" is displayed.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.
- □ To cancel a scan size, press [Cancel].

2 Select a vertical size, and then press [OK].



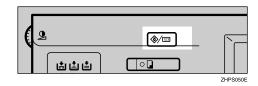
🔗 Note

- □ The displayed vertical size differs depending on the selected unit. When [mm] is selected, [Auto Detect], [210 mm (A4)], [257 mm (B4 JIS)], [297 mm (A3)], [216 mm (8 1/2)], and [279 mm (11)] are shown. When [inch] is selected, [Auto Detect], [8.3 inch (A4)], [10.1 inch (B4 JIS)], [11.7 inch (A3)], [8.5 inch], and [11.0 inch] are shown.
- □ To cancel a scan size, press [Cancel].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key. The standby display appears.

Deleting a scan size

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program / Change / Delete Scan Size].
- Press [Delete], and then select [Program Size 1] or [Program Size 2].

		22 APR 2005 10:45
	Program / Change / Delete Scan Size	
	Select size to delete.	
ail Settings	Program Size 1 ↔ 2 2 0 mm	‡ Auto Detect
	Program Size 2 ↔ 12.8 mm	\$ 210 mm
	Program / Change Delete	Exit

D Press [Yes].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel deleting, press **[No]**. The display returns to that of step **5**.

2 Press [Exit].

B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

8 Press [Exit].

Printing Journal

The Journal allows you to check a maximum of the last 50 communications (receptions and transmissions) performed by the machine. You can print the Journal using the Information menu. See p.27 "Printing the Journal".

Counters

This function allows you to check the total number of pages transmitted and received.

- Transmissions: Total number of transmitted pages
- Receptions: Total number of received pages

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

E Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [Transmission Page Count].

	22 APR 2005 10:45
	Exit
ail Settings	IP-Fax Settings Administrator Tools
	Transmission Page Count
	Forwarding
	Memory Lock RX Off
	ECM On
	1 / 3 ▲ Free. ▼Next

- After checking the display, press [Exit].
- **6** Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key. The standby display appears.

Forwarding

This function allows you to have documents printed on the machine, and sent to a specified End Receiver.

This is useful if, for example, you are visiting another office and would like a copy of your documents to be sent to that office.

You can also specify a "folder" as the forwarding destination.

Preparation

To use this function, set Forwarding under Reception Settings to On (enable). See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Limitation

- The Forwarding function does not forward documents received with Confidential Reception, Memory Lock, Polling Reception mode, or documents received by Transfer Request.
- You can select end receivers only from among destinations programmed in the Address Book. You cannot specify programmed transfer stations as end receivers.

🖉 Note

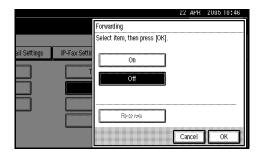
- A fax number, e-mail address, IP-Fax destination, and folder can be set as the forwarding destination.
- Even when [On] is selected for "Forwarding" in "Reception Settings", if [Off] is selected for the forwarding destination in this function, only printing is performed, not forwarding. See p.147 "Reception Settings".
- When you wish to change the end receivers depending on the senders, specify the end receivers by the senders, at "Program Special Sender". Documents not received from specified senders are sent to the destination specified in this function. See p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently"
- You can specify whether or not to print forwarded documents. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 11, bit 6).
- Deleting a destination specified as a forward destination from the destination list causes the settings of the forward destination to be deleted, so they must be registered again. When a destination is changed, a document is transmitted to the new destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 32, bit 0).
- You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. See p.145 "General Settings/Adjustment".
- If you have specified a folder for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 3).

Programming an End Receiver

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- **4** Press [Forwarding].
- **5** Press [On].



Limitation

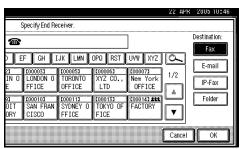
One end receiver can be registered for each special sender. To register two or more end receivers, use group destination. However, a maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group.

🖉 Note

- If there is an End Receiver already programmed, a receiver name is shown. If you want to change the receiver, press [Receiver] and proceed to step [].
- □ To cancel Forwarding, press [Off] and proceed to step **7**.

9

5 Specify an End Receiver using the destination list, and then press [OK].



The receiver name is shown to the right of **[Receiver]**.

- 🖉 Note
- Press the button on the right of the display to switch the destination between fax number, email address, IP-Fax destination, and folder.
- Set a folder destination in Address Book Management under Administrator Tools in the System Settings menu. See "Registering Folders", General Settings Guide.
- If you have specified a folder for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 3).
- □ If you make a mistake, press **[Clear]** before pressing **[OK]**, and then try again.

Press [OK].

Bress the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Quitting the forwarding function

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Forwarding].
- **5** Press [Off], and then press [OK].

		22 APR 200510:46
		Forwarding
		Select item, then press [OK].
ail Settings	IP-Fax Settin	On Off
		Receiver [00003] LONDON OFFICE

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

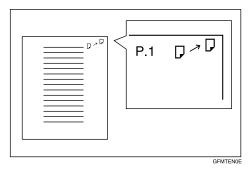
Forwarding Mark

You can print a Forwarding Mark on receiver's documents that have been forwarded.

The receiver can distinguish between forwarded and normally received documents.

🖉 Note

- You can specify whether or not to print a Forwarding Mark in the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 02, bit 0).
- This function is not available when memory forwarding is performed to a folder destination.



Memory Lock

When you switch Memory Lock on, received documents are stored in memory and not printed automatically. When a document is received in the Memory Lock mode, the Confidential File (1) indicator blinks. To print this document, enter the Memory Lock ID. A user without the ID cannot print the document. This prevents unauthorized users from seeing the document.

Preparation

To use Memory Lock, program the Memory Lock ID, and then switch Memory Lock on. See p.194 "Programming a Memory Lock ID".

Limitation

This function is not available with Internet Fax.

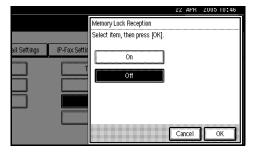
🖉 Note

To store incoming documents from Special Senders only in Memory Lock, program each sender with "Special Senders to Treat Differently". See p.172 "Special Senders to Treat Differently".

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- E Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Memory Lock RX].
- Select [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

□ To cancel this setting, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 4.

O Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

ECM (Error Correction Mode)

If part of a transmission fails because of a line problem, the lost data is automatically resent. For this function to work, the other machine must have ECM. You can turn this function on or off through the following procedure.

Limitation

This function is not available with Internet Fax.

🖉 Note

- □ If you turn ECM off, you cannot use the following functions:
 - JBIG Transmission
 - Super G3 Communication

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

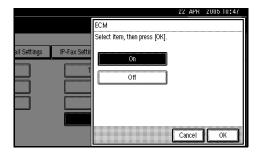


2 Press [Facsimile Features].

Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [ECM].

Select [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].



🔗 Note

□ To cancel this setting, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 4.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

User Parameters

User Parameters allow you to customize various settings to suit your needs. To change function settings, set the User Parameter Switches.

Switches and Bits

Each User Parameter has a set of switches, and each of the switches consist of eight bits, whose values are "0" or "1". The right most bit is bit 0 and the left most is bit 7. You can adjust the settings to match your needs by switching the value of bits between "0" and "1".

Switch 02	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
	\downarrow							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

User Parameter List

User Parameter Switches are outlined in the following table.

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1
02	0	Forwarding Mark	Off	On
	3	TSI Print	Off	On
03	0	Automatic printing of the Communication Result Re- port	Off	On
	2	Automatic printing of the Memory Storage Report	Off	On
	3	Automatic printing of the Polling RX Reserve Report	Off	On
	4	Automatic printing of the Polling RX Result Report	Off	On
	5	Automatic printing of the Im- mediate TX Result Report	Off	On
	6	Automatic printing of the Polling TX Clear Report	Off	On
	7	Automatic printing of the Journal	Off	On

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1			
04	0	Automatic printing of the Confidential File Report	Off	On			
	1	Automatic printing of Com- munication Failure Report and Transfer Result Report	Off	On			
	4	Indicates the parties	Off	On			
	5	Include sender's name on reports	Off	On			
	7	Include a portion of the image on reports	Off	On			
05	0	Receive Service Call (SC) Condition (Substitute Recep- tion during service call)	Possible (Substi- tute RX)	Not possible (Re- ception off)			
	2, 1	Substitute the reception when the machine cannot print (because paper is jammed, all paper trays have run out of paper, toner is empty, or all paper trays are out of order)					
			0: Enabled unconditionally (Free)				
	01: Enabled when Own Name/Own Fax Number is received						
		10: Enabled for Polling ID match 11: Disabled (Reception off)					
	5	Print sheet is limited to that which has highest priority.	Off	On			
	7	Empty tray alert (Paper Emp- ty Warning) even when one paper tray is empty	Off	On			
06	6	First page scanned for book originals	From the left page	From the right page			
07	2	Parallel Memory Transmis- sion	Off	On			
08	2	Authorized Reception Type	Receive from spec- ified senders only.	Receive all docu- ments except from specified senders.			
10	1	Combine two originals	Off	On			
	3	Page reduction when printing	Off	On			
	5	Reception file setting	Off	On			
	6	Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to con- firm the transmission results	Off	On			
11	6	Local print when forwarding	Off	On			
	7	Polling file after sending (Polling transmission standby time)	Delete (Use Once)	Standby (Save)			

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1	
14	0	Print documents received with Auto Power-On Recep- tion (Night Printing mode)	Immediate print- ing (On)	When turning on the operation switch (Off)	
	1	Long Document Transmis- sion (Well Log)	Off	On	
	2	Batch Transmission	Off	On	
	3	Reset when function changed	Off	On	
17	2	Whether you need to press [Add] after specifying a desti- nation with the Destination key when broadcasting	Not necessary	Necessary	
	7	Receive documents by press- ing the [Start] key when orig- inals are not set.	Off (no documents received after pressing the [Start] key)	On (documents re- ceived after press- ing the [Start] key)	
18	0	Print date with Fax Header	Off	On	
	1	Print transmitter origin with Fax Header	Off	On	
	2	Print file number with Fax Header	Off	On	
	3	Print page number with Fax Header	Off	On	
19	0	Use paper delivery shift func- tion (Offset Print)	Off	On	
	1	Sort Journal by line type	Off	On	
20	0	Automatic printing of the LAN-Fax Result Report.	Off	On	
	5, 4, 3, 2	Reprinting time of stored documents in memory that could not be print- ed using LAN-Fax Driver 0000: 0 minutes / 0001: 1 minute / 0010: 2 minutes / 0011: 3 minutes / 0100: 4 minutes / 0101: 5 minutes / 0110: 6 minutes / 0111: 7 minutes / 1000: 8 minutes / 1001: 9 minutes / 1010: 10 minutes / 1011: 11 minutes / 1100: 12 minutes / 1101: 13 minutes / 1110: 14 minutes / 1111: 15 min- utes			

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1
21	0	Print results of sending Re- ception Notice Request mes- sage	Off (print only when an error oc- curs)	On
	1	Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request	Off	On
	3	File format for files forward- ed to folder destinations	TIFF	PDF
	4	Transmit Journal by E-mail	Off	On
	6	Display Network error	Display (On)	Not display (Off)
	7	Transmit Error Mail Notifica- tion	On	Off
22	0	Detect a dial tone before send- ing faxes when using the tele- phone line (LINE)	Not detect (Off)	Detect (On)
	1	Detect a dial tone before send- ing faxes when using the tele- phone line (LINE2)	Not detect (Off)	Detect (On)
	2	Detect a dial tone before send- ing faxes when using the tele- phone line (LINE3)	Not detect (Off)	Detect (On)
24	0	Store documents that could not be transmitted in memory	Off	On
	1	Length of time documents that could not be transmitted are stored in memory	24 hours	72 hours
25	4	RDS	Off	On
32	0	Select which order of priority to be used to select an alterna- tive destination when there is	Paper Output Pri- ority <priority or-<br="">der></priority>	Electronic Output Priority <priority Order></priority
		no destination of the specified type.	1. IP-Fax destina- tion	1. E-mail address 2. Folder
			 2. Fax number 3. E-mail address 	3. IP-Fax destina- tion
			4. Folder	4. Fax number
34	0	Use gatekeeper server with IP-Fax	Off	On
	1	Use SIP server with IP-Fax	Off	On

Changing the User Parameters

Preparation

Access to some User Parameter Settings requires installation of optional equipment, or that other settings be made beforehand.

∰Important

- It is recommended that you print and keep a User Parameter list when you program or change a User Parameter. See p.172 "Printing the User Parameter List".
- Do not change any bit switches other than those shown on the previous pages.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

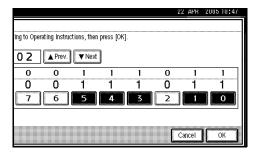
Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [Parameter Setting].

Select the switch number you want to change.

Parameter Setting
Select switch No. referring to Operating Instructions.
00 01 02 03 04 05 0
10 11 12 13 14 15 1
20 21 22 23 24 25 2
30 31 32 33 34 35 3

5 Select the bit number you want to change.



When the bit number is pressed, the current value switches between 1 and 0.

🖉 Note

- Repeat from step 6 to change another bit number for the same switch.
- **2** Press [OK].

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel these settings, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step **5**.
- Repeat steps **5** through **7** to change the switch settings.
- 9 After all the settings are finished, press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Printing the User Parameter List

Print this list to see the current User Parameter settings. However, only items of importance or often-used items are included in the list.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [Print List] next to "Parameter Setting".

Press the [Start] key.

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel printing a list before pressing the **[Start]** key, press **[Cancel]** or the **[Clear/Stop]** key. The display returns to that of step **4**.
- □ To cancel printing a list after pressing the **[Start]** key, press **[Stop Printing]**. The display returns to that of step **[**].

D Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Special Senders to Treat Differently

By programming particular senders in advance, you can set the following function for each sender:

- Authorized RX
- Forwarding
- Reception File Print Qty
- Print 2 Sided
- Memory Lock
- Paper Tray

Use the Own Name or Own Fax Number to program your senders. If the sender has a machine of the same manufacturer, program an Own Name that has already been programmed as a sender. If the machine is not of the same manufacturer, use Own Fax Number. You can apply the same settings to all programmed numbers. You can then customize the settings for individual numbers as necessary using the Special Sender Registration function.

The following items can be programmed.

- Special Senders (Up to 30. A maximum of 20 characters for each name when using G3.)
- Full/Partial agreement When you program own names and facsimile names for multiple destinations, you can program a common sequence of characters to identify destinations using Partial agreement.

Using Full matching

Destination to be programmed (Own Name)	Number of programmed identifications
NEW YORK BRANCH	3
HONG KONG BRANCH	
SYDNEY BRANCH	

Using Partial matching

Destination to be	Number of
programmed	programmed
(Own Name)	identifications

🖉 Note

- □ You can program up to 30 wild cards.
- □ Spaces are ignored when identifications are compared.
- □ You can use wild cards for the following functions:
 - See p.175 "Programming/Changing Special Senders".
 - See p.176 "Authorized RX (Authorized Reception)".
 - See p.176 "Forwarding".
- When using Partial agreement, you can enter up to the first 24 characters of an e-mail address to use it as an own name or facsimile name.

Limitation

- You cannot program senders as Special Senders if they do not have Own Name or Own Fax Number programmed.
- The machine cannot differentiate between Polling Reception and Free Polling documents from Special Senders.

- □ You cannot use the following functions with Internet Fax receptions.
 - Authorized RX
 - Reception File Print Qty
 - Memory Lock

🖉 Note

- □ You can program up to 24 characters for the sender.
- You can check Own Name and Own Fax Number using the Journal. You can check programmed Special Senders using the specified sender list. See p.27 "Printing the Journal". See p.181 "Printing the Special Sender List".
- To use Forwarding, Print 2 Sided, or Paper Tray with Internet Fax reception, program the sender's email address.
- □ If you select "Off" for the Special Sender function in "Initial Set Up", the settings will be the same as the Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Authorized Reception

Use this function to limit incoming senders. The machine only receives faxes from programmed Special Senders, and therefore, it helps you screen out unwanted documents, such as junk mail, and saves wasting fax paper.

🖉 Note

- To use this function, program the Special Senders function, and then select "On" in "Authorized RX" with "Reception Settings". See p.147 "Reception Settings". See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 08, bit 2).
- Without programming Special Senders, the Authorized RX function will not work, even if you select "On".

- You can select to receive only from programmed senders or receive only from senders other than those programmed in User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 08, bit 2).
- If you select "Off" for "Authorized RX" in "Initial Set Up", settings are the same as the Reception Settings. See p.147 "Reception Settings".
- You can change Special Senders in the same way as you program them.

Forwarding

Use this function to print received documents, and then transfer them to those receivers programmed before-hand.

Folder destination can be registered.

It is also possible to forward faxes sent only by senders programmed as Special Senders.

🖉 Note

- To use this function, program your Special Senders, and then select "On" for "Forwarding" in "Reception Settings". See p.147 "Reception Settings".
- □ If you specify "On" in "Forwarding" and select **[Same as Basic Settings]**, the fax document is forwarded to the receivers programmed in "Specify End Receiver.". See p.162 "Forwarding".
- If you do not program any Special Senders, the machine transfers all incoming documents to the other end receivers specified in "Specify End Receiver.".
- You can set the fax destination, Internet fax destination, IP-Fax destination or folder destination, as a forward destination.

- Set folder destinations using the Address Book Management function under System Settings. See "Registering Folders", General Settings Guide.
- If you have specified a folder for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 3).

Reception File Print Quantity

Use this function to print the specified number of copies of documents received from programmed senders (Special Senders). If you do not program any Special Senders, the machine prints the specified number of copies for all received documents.

Limitation

You cannot use multi-copy printing with Polling Reception, Confidential Reception, or Memory Lock.

🖉 Note

□ You can specify up to 10 copies.

Print 2 Sided

Use this function to print on both sides of the paper.

Limitation

If you select the bypass tray for "Paper Tray", duplex printing is disabled.

Memory Lock

Use this function to store incoming documents from programmed senders (Special Senders) in memory without printing them. People without the Memory Lock ID cannot print the documents, and therefore this function is useful for receiving confidential documents. If you do not program any senders, the machine receives fax document from all senders using Memory Lock reception.

Preparation

You must register Memory Lock ID in advance. See p.194 "Programming a Memory Lock ID".

Limitation

If you program the same sender in Memory Lock and Forwarding, Forwarding is disabled.

Paper Tray

Use this function to print documents received from programmed senders (Special Senders) and the documents from other senders on different types of paper.

For example, if blue paper is in Tray 1 and white paper is in Tray 2, the machine prints the documents from Special Senders on the blue paper and prints the documents from other senders on the white paper, making it easy for you to separate the two.

If you do not program any Special Senders, the machine outputs documents received from all senders using the default paper tray.

Limitation

For Polling Reception, you cannot select the paper tray.

🖉 Note

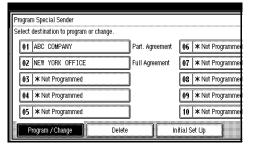
- If the machine receives a document that has a different size from the paper in the specified tray, the machine prints it after splitting it or minimizing its size. See p.101 "Page Separation and Length Reduction".
- Selection of the bypass tray enables you to specify the paper size in "Scan Area".

Programming/Changing Special Senders

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- E Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program Special Sender].
- Check [Program / Change] is selected.
- **6** Select the destination to program or change.



When programming a new Special Sender, press [*Not Programmed].

2 Enter a destination name, and then press [OK].

Enter a destination name using Own Name or Own Fax Number.

Reference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

Press [Full Agreement] or [Partial Agreement].

		22 APK 2005 10:49
ess [OK].		
ANY	Conditions: Full	Agreement Partial Agreement
	Print 2 Sided	Same as Basic Settings
Basic Settings	Memory Lock	Same as Basic Settings
Basic Settings	Paper Tray	Same as Basic Settings
		Cancel OK

Select the item you want to program.

Register / Change Check conten	ts, then press [OK].	
Own Name and Fax Number	C COMPANY	Cond
Authorized RX	Off	Prin
Forwarding	Same as Basic Settings	Men
Reception File Print Qty	Same as Basic Settings	Pa

🖉 Note

- □ You must select only the item you want to program.
- □ To cancel these settings, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **5**.

Authorized RX (Authorized Reception)

Select [Authorized RX].

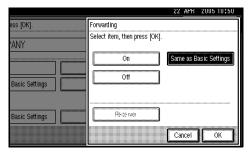
Press [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].

Note 🖉

After you perform step), set "Authorized RX" of "Reception Settings" to "On". See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Forwarding

Select [Forwarding]. Select [On] or [Off].



If you select **[Off]**, proceed to step **4**.

🖉 Note

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "Forwarding" under "Administrator Tools". See p.162 "Forwarding".
- **3** Press the Destination key of a forward destination, and then press [OK].

En	d Receiver	ę	Specify End Re	ceiver.		
nt		1				
	Freq. AE	B CD E	F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ
R 9	COODO 13 ABC COMP ANY	COODO23 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON O FFICE	COODOSI TORONTO OFFICE	<u>¢00006</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE
ri	E000081 PARIS OF FICE	LOOOO91 DETROIT FACTORY	COODIDI SAN FRAN CISCO	COOD113 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	E000143 ALL FACTORY
	Ľ					

Limitation

- One forward destination can be registered for each Special Sender. To register two or more forward destinations, use group destinations. However a maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group.
- 🖉 Note
- Press the button on the right of the display to switch the destination between fax number, email address, IP-Fax destination, and folder.
- Set folder destinations using the Address Book Management function under System Settings. See "Registering Folders", *General Settings Guide*.
- When a folder is specified as the forward destination, you can set a file format for forwarding. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 3).
- Deleting a destination specified as a forward destination from the destination table causes the settings of the forward destination to be deleted, so they must be registered again. When a destination is changed, a document is transmitted to the new destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 32, bit 0).

Press [OK].

5 Press [OK].



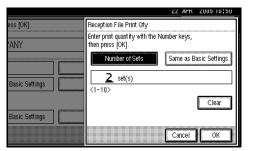
□ After you perform step ①, set "Forwarding" of "Reception Settings" to "On". See p.147 "Reception Settings". **Reception File Print Qty**

Select [Reception File Print Qty]. Press [Number of Sets].

		ZZ	APK	2005 10:5)U
ess [OK].	Reception File Print Qty				
	Select item, then press [OK].				
ANY		_			
	Number of Sets	Sam	e as B	asic Settings	
	set(s)				ור
Basic Settings	<1-10>				-1
				Clear	
Basic Settings					
		Ca	ncel	ОК]

🖉 Note

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "RX File Print Qty" of "Reception Settings". See p.147 "Reception Settings".
- **3** Enter the print quantity using the number keys, and then press [OK].



🔗 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

g

Print 2 Sided



Select [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "2 Sided Print" of "Reception Settings". See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Memory Lock

Select [Memory Lock].

Select [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "Program Memory Lock ID" under "Administrator Tools". See p.165 "Memory Lock".

Paper Tray

Select [Paper Tray].

2 Select the tray you want to use, and then press [OK].

🖉 Note

Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "Paper Tray" of "Reception Settings". See p.147 "Reception Settings".

DPress [OK].

A Special Sender is programmed.

🖉 Note

□ To program another sender, repeat the procedure from step **[**].

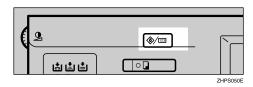
Press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key. The standby display appears.

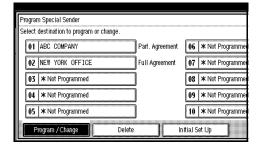
Programming Initial Set Up of a Special Sender

Use this function to program "Initial Set Up" of a Special Sender. You can also specify the Bypass Tray Paper Size.

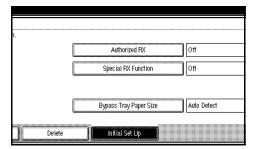
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program Special Sender].
- **5** Press [Initial Set Up].



b Select the function you want to program.

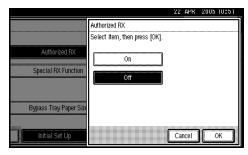


Note 🖉

□ In this feature, "Authorized RX" has the same settings as "Reception Settings". See p.147 "Reception Settings".

Programming Authorized RX and Special RX Function

- Select [Authorized RX] or [Special] RX Function].
- 2 Select [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].



The illustration shows the "Authorized RX" display as an example.

Programming Bypass Tray Paper Size

Press [Bypass Tray Paper Size].

You can select a size from [Auto Detect], [Standard Size], or [Custom Size].

If you select [Auto Detect], proceed to steps **2** and **7**.

If you select [Standard Size], proceed to steps **2**, **3**, and **7**.

If you select [Custom Size], proceed to steps **2** , and **4** to **7**.

2 Select the size you want to program.

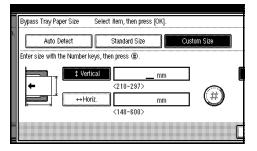
F	
	Bypass Tray Paper Size Select item, then press [OK].
۱.	Auto Detect Standard Size Custom Size
	Load standard size paper in orientation of □. Adjust paper guide to paper size.

Note 🖉

- □ If you select **[Auto Detect]**, the
 - machine recognizes the paper size automatically.
 - The machine will detect the paper size for the bypass tray as the short edge of the paper is inserted into the machine. Even if you place an A4 size sheet in the \square orientation, the machine will detect it as A3₽.
- □ If you select [Standard Size], select a paper size displayed, and then proceed to step **7**.
- □ If you select [Custom Size], proceed to step **4**.
- **3** Select the size you want to program from the sizes shown.

Make sure that [Vertical] is selected.

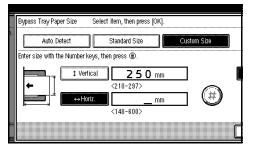
Enter the vertical size of the paper using the number keys, and then press [#].



🖉 Note

- You can specify a vertical size from 210 mm (8.3") to 297 mm (11.6"). You cannot enter a size smaller than 210 mm or larger than 297 mm.
- Each time you press [mm] or [inch], the units switch between "mm" and "inch". If you enter a length and change the units by pressing [mm] or [inch], it is converted automatically (fractions are rounded off).

Enter the horizontal size of the paper using the number keys, and then press [#].



🖉 Note

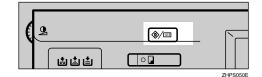
- □ You can specify a horizontal size from 148 mm (5.9") to 600 mm (23.7"). You cannot enter a size smaller than 148 mm or larger than 600 mm.
- Each time you press [mm] or [inch], the units switch between "mm" and "inch". If you enter a length and change the units by pressing [mm] or [inch], it is converted automatically (fractions are rounded off).
- Press [OK].
- **2** Press [Exit].
- Bress the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Deleting a Special Sender

Use this function to program "Initial Set Up" of a Special Sender. The Bypass Tray Paper Size can also be specified.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- E Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program Special Sender].
- **5** Press [**Delete**], and then select the Special Sender you want to delete.

6 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel deleting a special sender, press **[Do not Delete]**. The display returns to that of step **5**.

7 Press [Exit].

B Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

The standby display appears.

Printing the Special Sender List

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].



Press [Print List] next to "Program Special Sender".

5 Press the **[Start]** key.

After printing the list, you can then start from step **4**.

🖉 Note

- To cancel printing a list before pressing the [Start] key, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key. The display returns to that of step].
- □ To cancel printing a list after pressing the [Start] key, press [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step 4.

6 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

The standby display appears.

Box Settings

The following functions are for delivery and transfer of documents:

- Personal Box
- Information Box
- Transfer Box

For details about how to set up these functions:

- p.182 "Programming/changing Personal Boxes"
- p.185 "Programming/changing Information Boxes"
- p.188 "Programming/changing Transfer Boxes"

For details about how to print out and delete documents stored in boxes:

- p.40 "Personal Boxes"
- p.42 "Information Boxes"

SUB Code and SEP Code

SUB Code and SEP Code are IDs consisting of up to 20 digits, and can include numbers, #, *, and spaces. To use this function, you must program a box and SUB/SEP Code beforehand. The other party can send documents to, and retrieve stored documents from, this box using the code.

Limitation

□ You cannot set the same Box code on two different boxes.

Transmission or programming may not be allowed if there is not enough free memory left. The amount of free memory left differs depending on the optional equipment installed. 9

🖉 Note

The combined total of items that can be stored using the Personal Box, Information Box, and Transfer Box functions is 150.

Programming/changing Personal Boxes

This section describes how to program Personal Boxes.

You can store the following items:

- Box name (required) Up to 20 characters long
- SUB Code (required) Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).
- Password (optional) Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).

🖉 Note

- When programming a password, a mark is displayed before the Box name.
- Receiver (optional) You can program one delivery destination for each Personal Box.
 Specify a delivery destination programmed in Destination key.

🖉 Note

- □ You can specify a fax number, Internet Fax destination and IP-Fax destination as the transmission destination.
- □ The Fax Header is not printed on delivered documents.
- If a document cannot be delivered, a Communication Failure Report is printed and the document is saved as a Confidential Reception document.

- You can edit boxes in the same way you program them. However, boxes that are being used cannot be edited.
- □ If a destination in the destination table is deleted after being registered, delivery is not performed and the settings of the delivery destination are also deleted. Also, when a delivery destination is changed, a document is sent to the changed destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 32, bit 0).

\mathcal{P} Reference

p.40 "Personal Boxes"

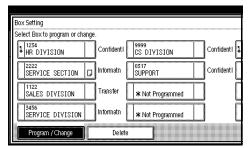
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Box Setting].
- Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

6 Select a box to program.

When programming a new box, press [*Not Programmed].



🖉 Note

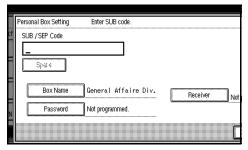
□ To change a box already programmed, press it and proceed to step **9**.

2 Press [Personal Box].

Enter a box name, and then press [OK].

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

9 Enter a SUB Code.



🖉 Note

□ To change the SUB Code, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again. To change a Box name, press [Box Name], and then repeat from step ⊡.

D Specify the settings you require.

If you do not want to program a password or receiver, proceed to step **1**.

Programming a password

- Press [Password].
- 2 Enter a password, and then press [OK].

	22 APR 2	005 11:02
Enter SUB code.	Password	
	Enter password with the Number keys, then press [OK].	
		(ka
General Affaire Div	Spara	ОК
Not programmed.		
	Cancel	ж

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- **3** Re-enter the password, and then press [OK].

	ZZ APR	2005 11:02
Enter SUB code.	Password	
	Re-enter for password confirmation, and then press [OK].	
	_	(ka
General Affaire Div	Spare	×
Not programmed.		
	Cancel) (M

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- To change the password after pressing [OK], press [Change] and repeat steps 2 and 3, or press [Cancel] and repeat from step 1.

4 Press [OK].

Programming an End Receiver

Press [Receiver].

2 Select a destination using the destination list, and then press [OK].

	Receiver	Specify receive	r.		
c†	8]
		F GH I	JK LMN	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ
	C000013 C000023 ABC COMP BERLIN O ANY FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	1000061 XYZ CO., LTD	1000073 New York OFFICE
	C000083 PARIS OF FICE FACTORY	<u>Cooo103</u> San Fran CISCO	COOOTID SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>0000133</u> Tokyo of Fice	FACTORY

🔗 Note

Press the button shown on the right side of the screen to switch the destination among fax number, Internet Fax address and IP-Fax address.

Press [OK].

- Press [Exit].
- B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

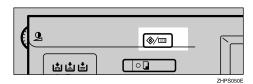
The standby display appears.

Deleting Personal Boxes

This section describes how to delete Personal Boxes.

Limitation

- □ If documents were programmed in the box, you cannot delete the box.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Box Setting].
- **5** Press [**Delete**], and then select the box you want to delete.

Box Setting Select Box to delete.		
کا 1234 HR DIVISION Confid	enti 9999 CS DIVISION	Confident I 🕽
SERVICE SECTION	atn SUPPORT	Confident I
SALES DIVISION Transfe	er 🛛 🗶 Ned Frequencies	
SERVICE DIVISION	atn 🛛 🗶 Ned Programment	
Program / Change	Delete	

With a programmed password

• Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].

Ū	Enter password with the Number keys, then press [OK].	Space
	Cancel	ОК

🔗 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

6 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel deleting a box, press **[Do not Delete]**. The display returns to that of step **5**.

2 Press [Exit].

B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Programming/changing Information Boxes

This section describes how to set up an Information Box.

You can store the following items:

- Box name (required) Up to 20 characters long
- SEP Code (required) Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).

• Password (optional)

Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).

When programming a password, a mark is displayed before the Box name.

🖉 Note

- You can edit boxes in the same way you program them. However, boxes that are being used cannot be edited.
- □ If a destination in the destination list is deleted after being registered, delivery is not performed and the settings of the delivery destination are also deleted. Also, when a delivery destination is changed, a document is sent to the changed destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 32, bit 0).

${}^{\mathcal{P}}$ Reference

p.42 "Information Boxes"

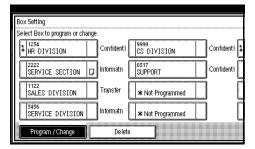
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Box Setting].
- Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

6 Select the box to program.

When programming a new box, press [*Not Programmed].



🖉 Note

To change a box already programmed, press it, and then proceed to step **[]**. If a password is programmed, enter the password, press **[OK]**, and then proceed to step **[]**.

2 Press [Information Box].

Enter a box name, and then press [OK].

Reference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

9 Enter the SEP Code.

_		
	Information Box En	ter SEP code.
ch	SUB / SEP Code	
	_	
	Spare	
-	-	
	Box Name Gen	eral Info.
N	Password Not	programmed.

🖉 Note

□ To change the SEP Code, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again. To change the box name, press [Box Name], and then repeat the procedure from step ③.

Press [Password].

🖉 Note

- □ If you do not want to program a password, proceed to step **[**].
- Enter a password, and then press [OK].

	22 <u>AP</u>	3 2005 11:04
Enter SEP code.	Password	
	Enter password with the Number keys, the press [OK].)n
	_	i ka
General Info.	Space	ОК
Not programmed.		
	Cancel	ж

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- Re-enter the password, and then press [OK].

	22 <u>AP</u>	R 200511:04
Enter SEP code.	Password	
	Re-enter for password confirmation, and then press [OK].	
	_	(ka
General Info.	Sparo	·Ж
Not programmed.		
	Cancel	ж

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To change the password after pressing **[OK]**, press **[Change]** and repeat steps **①** and **②**, or press **[Cancel]** and repeat from step **①**.

Press [OK].

```
Press [OK].
```

D Press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Deleting Information Boxes

This section describes how to delete Information Boxes.

Limitation

If documents are stored in the box, you cannot delete the box.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

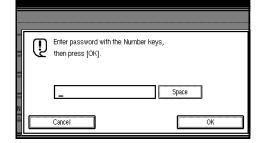


- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- **4** Press [Box Setting].
- **5** Press [Delete], and then select the box you want to delete.

Box Setting						
Select Box to delete.						
کا 1234 HR DIVISION	ConfidentI	9999 CS DIVISION	Confident I	1		
SERVICE SECTION	Informatn	0317 SUPPORT	Confident I			
SALES DIVISION	Transfer	* Nel শিক্ষকাগল] [
SERVICE DIVISION	Informatn	* Nol Frequences] [
Program / Change	Deleti	e				

With a programmed password

Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

6 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel deleting a box, press **[Do not Delete]**. The display returns to that of step **5**.

2 Press [Exit].

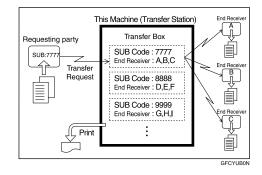
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Programming/changing Transfer Boxes

This function turns the machine into a fax relay station. Documents sent with a SUB Code that matches the SUB Code programmed as a Transfer Box are received, and then relayed to a programmed receiver.

Since documents can be sent to multiple destinations in a single transfer request, you can economize on call charges when sending to remote destinations.



🖉 Note

Inform the Requesting Party of the SUB Code assigned to the Transfer Box. When they want to have a document transferred by your machine, ask them to send the document using SUB Code Transmission and specifying this SUB Code. If a password has also been programmed, inform them of this too, and ask them to enter it as the SID code.

You can store the following items:

- Box name (required) Up to 20 characters
- SUB Code (required) Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).

• Password (optional) Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).

🖉 Note

- When programming a password, a mark is displayed in front of the Box name.
- End Receiver (required) You can store five End Receivers (destinations to which documents are forwarded) for each box. Specify End Receivers using a single or group destination programmed in the destination list beforehand.

Limitation

□ After documents are transferred, Transfer Result Reports are not sent back to the sender.

🖉 Note

- □ You can specify the Internet fax destination and IP-Fax destination as a reception station.
- □ After documents are transferred, they are deleted.
- When this function is turned on, the machine prints out the received documents it transfers and a Transfer Result Report after the transfer has finished. If you want to turn this function off, contact your service representative.
- When the programmed receiver is a group destination for Multi-step Transfer, Multi-step Transfer takes place. For more information, contact your service representative.
- You can edit boxes in the same way you program them.

□ If you delete a destination specified as a reception destination using the destination list, the settings of the reception destination are also deleted, so they must be registered again. When a destination is changed, a document is transmitted to the new destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 32, bit 0).

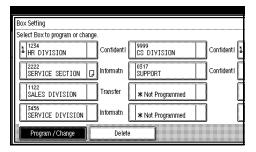
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Box Setting].
- Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

6 Select the box to program.

When programming a new box, press [*Not Programmed].



🖉 Note

□ To change a box already programmed, press it, and then proceed to step **9**.

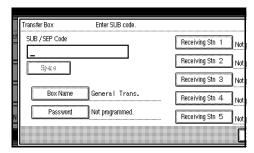
2 Press [Transfer Box].

Enter a Box name, and then press [OK].

₽ Reference

"Entering Text", General Settings Guide

9 Enter a SUB Code.



🖉 Note

- □ To change the SUB Code, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again. To change Box name, press [Box Name], and then repeat from step 3.
- D Specify the condition of registration.

Programming End Receivers

Select an End Receiver.

🖉 Note

□ You can store five End Receivers.

Specify End Receivers with Destination keys, and then press [OK].

ch			· · ·	ring station.		
	a]
	Freq. AB	CD E	F GH I	JK	OPQ RST	UVW XYZ
	ABC COMP ANY	E000023 BERLIN O FFICE	LONDON 0 FFICE	TORONTO OFFICE	<u>£000063</u> XYZ CO., LTD	1000071 New York OFFICE
N	COODOBD PARIS OF FICE	COOOO93 DETROIT FACTORY	<u>COOO 103</u> SAN FRAN CISCO	1000113 SYDNEY O FFICE	<u>000133</u> TOKYO OF FICE	FACTORY

🖉 Note

- You can change the display to the fax destination, Internet fax destination, and IP-Fax destination using the button on the right side of the display.
- A reception station can also be registered as a group destination. In such a case, a maximum of 500 parties including End Receivers 1-5 can be specified in a group.

To register another End Receiver, repeat from step **①**.

Programming a password

If you do not want to program a password, proceed to step **1**.

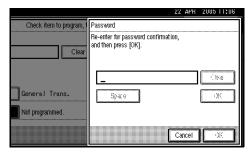
- Press [Password].
- Enter a password, and then press [OK].

	22 APR 2005 11:06
Check item to program, t	Password
Clear	Enter password with the Number keys, then press [OK].
General Trans.	Space OK
Not programmed.	
	Cancel 🛛 🕅

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

3 Re-enter the password, and then press [OK].



🔗 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- To change the password after pressing [OK], press [Change] and repeat steps 2 and 3, or press [Cancel] and repeat from step 1.
- **4** Press [OK].
- Press [OK].
- Press [Exit].
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key. The standby display appears.

Deleting Transfer Boxes

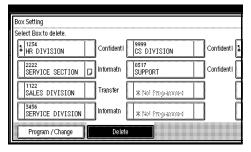
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- E Press [Administrator Tools].

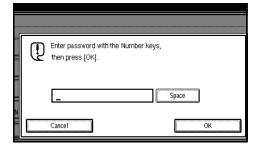
4 Press [Box Setting].

Press [Delete], and then select the box you want to delete.





Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

6 Press [Delete].

🖉 Note

□ To cancel deleting a special sender, press **[Do not Delete]**. The display returns to that of step **[**.

2 Press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Printing the Box List

Use the following procedure to print a list showing the currently programmed Personal Boxes, Information Boxes, and Transfer Boxes.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Print List] next to "Box Setting".

5 Press the **[Start]** key.

After printing the list, you can then start from step **4**.

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel printing a list before pressing the [Start] key, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key. The display returns to that of step].
- To cancel printing a list after pressing the [Start] key, press
 [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step].

O Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

The standby display appears.

Transfer Report

For the Requesting Party to be able to receive Transfer Result Reports from the Transfer Station, the Requesting Party must program the number of the telephone line that is connected to their own machine. See p.52 "Transfer Request".

Be sure to insert a pause after the area code.

For example, if you are in the United States and your fax number is 1212-1234567, program the following:

• 1212-1234567

You can program the fax number for the G3 line.

Limitation

You cannot program or edit a Transfer Report when using a line (during communication). Program or edit after communication.

Note

You cannot use Transfer Request if the telephone number of their machine is not programmed into that machine.

□ Up to 16 digits are available for G3.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

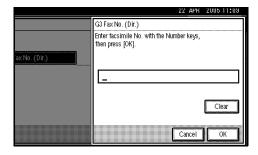
- E Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Transfer Report].

5 Specify the fax number.

Transf	er Report		
Select	item to pro	igram.	
		G3 Fax No. (Dir.)	
	b		

Programming a G3 Fax Number

- Press [G3 Fax No. (Dir.)].
- 2 Enter your facsimile number using the number keys, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press **[Clear]** or the **[Clear/Stop]** key, and then try again.

6 Press [Exit].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Programming a Confidential ID

Program a Confidential ID to print a Confidential Reception. See p.36 "Printing a Confidential Document".

🔗 Note

If you do not program a Confidential ID, you cannot receive a Confidential Transmission. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

E Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [Program Confidential ID].

Enter an ID using the number keys, and then press [OK].

	ZZ APR	2005 11:09
	Program Confidential ID	
ail Settings IP-Fax Setti	Enter 4 digit ID No. with the Number keys, then press [OK].	
Print List	* "0000"cannot be used as ID.	
Print List		Clear
Print List		
	Cancel	ОК

🔗 Note

- A Confidential ID can be any four-digit number, except 0000.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

To cancel programming an ID, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **[**.

6 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

The standby display appears.

Programming a Polling ID

Program a Polling ID to use the Transfer Request, Transfer Station, Default ID Polling Transmission, and Default ID Polling Reception functions. When you use ID Transmission, program the same ID as the one programmed on the sender's machine.

Reference

p.11 "Polling Transmission"

p.14 "Polling Reception"

p.52 "Transfer Request"

p.76 "Selecting transmission options for a single transmission"

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Program Polling ID].
- Enter an ID using the number keys and [A] to [F], and then press [OK].

	22 APR 2005 11:10
	Program Polling ID
ail Settings IP-Fax Settir	Enter 4 digit ID No. with the Number and A - F keys, then press [OK].
	* "0000" and "FFFF" cannot be used as ID.
Print List	A B C Clear
Print List 9	DEF
	Cancel OK

🖉 Note

- Register a four-digit number using 0 through 9 and A through F (expect for 0000 and FFFF).
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel programming an ID, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.

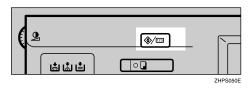
Deress the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Programming a Memory Lock ID

Program a Memory Lock ID to be entered before printing documents when the Memory Lock function is activated.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

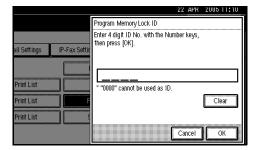


2 Press [Facsimile Features].

E Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [Program Memory Lock ID].

Enter an ID using the number keys, and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

- A Memory Lock ID can be any four-digit number, except 0000.
- □ If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.
- □ To cancel programming an ID, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.

6 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

The standby display appears.

Selecting Dial/Push Phone

Use this function to select a line type when the machine is connected to a G3 analog line.

Dial and Push lines are available for selection.

🖉 Note

- □ If the optional extra G3 interface unit is installed, settings for the extra G3 lines appear.
- □ This function is not available in some areas.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

Press [Administrator Tools].

Press [Select Dial / Push Phone].

• Press [Push Button Phone] or [Dial Phone (10PPS)] to select the line, and then press [OK].

	ZZ	APK	2005	11:10
e				
[ОК].				
Push Button Phone Dial Phone (10PPS)				
ſ				
	Ca	ncel		ж I

${}^{\mathcal{P}}$ Reference

p.205 "Selecting the Line Type"

Deress the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Storing or Printing Received Documents

The optional printer/scanner unit is required.

Specify whether received documents are to be saved on the hard disk or printed immediately without being saved. You can print stored documents repeatedly or download them as images to a computer using a Web Image Monitor or DeskTopBinder. If you select printing without saving, documents are printed each time they are received.

Limitation

If using System Settings you have set the machine to distribute received faxes to the delivery server, the documents cannot be saved on the hard disk.

🖉 Note

- You can use "User Parameters" (switch 10, bit 5) to set whether or not to print stored received document. See p.167 "User Parameters".
- If Store is selected and a destination for notification is specified, notification of document reception can be sent to the specified e-mail address.
- Documents saved on the hard disk are categorized as received and stored documents. For details about printing saved documents, see p.34 "Printing/Deleting Received and Stored Documents (Print/Delete Stored RX File)".
- You cannot switch the setting if received documents have been stored on the hard disk. To switch the setting, print documents stored on the hard disk if necessary, and then delete them.

- Received confidential documents are stored in memory. Use the Print Confidential RX File function to print them.
- With [Store] selected, more memory space is used as the number of saved documents increases. After memory space becomes insufficient, no more documents are saved on the hard disk. When this happens, the machine starts printing then overwriting old documents.
- You can store received documents up to a total of approximately 320 pages or 2,240 (when the optional expansion memory is installed) of A4 size Standard <ITU-T#1Chart>.
- □ You cannot send received documents.
- □ You cannot manage documents stored on the Document Server display.
- It is recommended that you use a Web Image Monitor running under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.

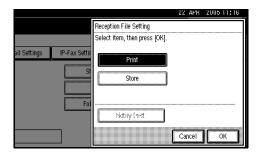
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2 Press [Facsimile Features].

- E Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Reception File Setting].

Select [Print] or [Store], and then press [OK].



🖉 Note

- □ To cancel your selection, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **[**.
- □ When **[Store]** is selected, you can select whether or not to send notice of reception to a specific e-mail address. To notify of reception, press **[Notify Dest.]** and select an e-mail address from the Internet Fax destinations programmed in the address book. Further, you can register a group destination. In such a case, a maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group.
- **O** Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

The standby display appears.

Reception Report e-mail

When a received document is stored, this report is sent to the e-mail address set as the destination for notification.

Setting a User for Viewing Received and Stored Documents

The administrator can be specified for managing documents stored on the machine after fax documents are received. To specify the administrator, enter the administrator user code for managing documents using Web Image Monitor or DeskTopBinder Lite/Professional.

Preparation

You must register the administrator's User Code to the destination list in advance. See "Authentication Information", *General Settings Guide*

🖉 Note

- This function is only available when Store is selected in Reception File Setting. See p.195 "Storing or Printing Received Documents".
- It is recommended that you use a Web Image Monitor running under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.
- If the programmed user code was deleted using the Address Book Management function under System Settings, you cannot view received and saved documents using a Web Image Monitor. Select [Off] in step **B** or reprogram the user code.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

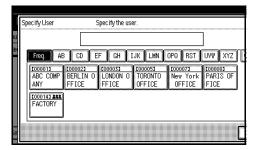


- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Stored RX File User Setting].
- If you want to use a user code, press [On].

		22	APK	2005 11:17
	Stored RX File User Setting			
	Select item, then press [OK]			
ail Settings P-Fax Setti	On Off			
	Speciny User			
		Ca	ncel	ОК

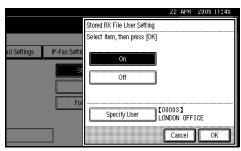
🖉 Note

- □ To disable user codes, press [Off], and then press [OK]. Proceed to step 3.
- □ To cancel the selection, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.
- **6** Press the Destination key of the user you wish to specify, and then press [OK].



9

Check the selected user, and then press [OK].



🔗 Note

When a programmed user is deleted from the destination list, a message "Deleted from Address Book" is displayed. Reenter the user.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The standby display appears.

Menu Protection Settings

You can set up user access rights for functions that users other than administrators can set. For a detailed description, ask the administrator.

Folder Transfer Result Report

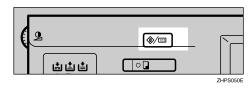
You can set whether the Folder Transfer Result Report is transmitted to the specified e-mail address, when folders are programmed as the forwarding destinations to which documents are sent from all senders or Special Senders.

Preparation

You must first register the destination for the Folder Transfer Result Report in the destination list. See "Fax Destination", *General Settings Guide*.

🖉 Note

- Specify a group destination to transfer documents to multiple destinations. See "Fax Destination", *General Settings Guide*. A maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group.
- Even if the Folder Transfer Result Report is not successfully transmitted, the report is not printed on this machine.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



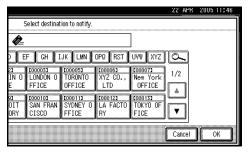
- **2** Press [Facsimile Features].
- B Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Folder Transfer Result Report].

5 To send the Folder Transfer Result Report, press [E-mail].

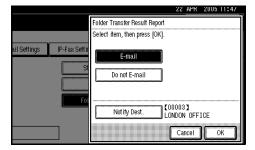


🔗 Note

- □ To not send the Folder Transfer Result Report, press [Do not Email], and then press [OK]. Proceed to step 3.
- □ To cancel the selection, press **[Cancel]**. The display returns to that of step **4**.
- **6** Press the Destination key of the email address for notification, and then press [OK].



Check the selected destination, and then press [OK].



B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key. The standby display appears.

Folder Transfer Result Report by e-mail

When forwarding is completed, if documents are sent from all senders or Special Senders, this report is sent to the e-mail address set as the destination for notification.

10. Solving Operation Problems

If an Error Report Is Printed

An Error Report is printed if a document cannot be successfully sent or received.

Possible causes include a problem with the machine or noise on the telephone line. If an error occurs during transmission, resend the original. If an error occurs during reception, ask the sender to resend the document.

🔗 Note

- □ If an error happens frequently, contact your service representative.
- The "Page" column gives the total number of pages. The "Page not sent" or "Page not received" column gives the number of pages not sent or received successfully.
- □ You can display a destination with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 4).
- □ You can display a sender name with the User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 04, bit 5).

Turning Off the Main Power / In the Event of Power Failure

A CAUTION:

• When you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, always pull the plug (not the cable).

Even if the main power switch is turned off, the contents of the machine memory (for example, programmed numbers) will not be lost. However, if power is lost for about one hour because the main power switch is turned off, there is a power cut, or the power cable is removed, contents of the Fax memory are lost. Lost items will include any fax documents stored in memory using Memory Transmission/Reception, Auto Document, Confidential Reception, Memory Lock, or Substitute Reception.

If a file was deleted from memory, a Power Failure Report is automatically printed as soon as the power is restored. This report can be used to identify lost files. If a memory stored for Memory Transmission was lost, resend it. If a document received by Memory Reception or Substitute Reception was lost, ask the sender to resend it.

∰Important

- Do not turn off the main power switch while the power indicator is lit or blinking. If you do, the hard disk and memory may be damaged and failure could result.
- Turn off the main power switch before pulling out the plug. If you pull out the plug with the switch on, the hard disk and memory may be damaged and failure could result.

- Make sure that 100% is shown on the display before you unplug the machine. If a lower value is shown, some data is currently present in memory.
- Right after a power failure, the internal battery needs to be sufficiently recharged to guard against future data loss. Keep the machine plugged in and the main power switch on for about 24 hours after the power loss.

RDS (Remote Diagnostic System)

If the machine has a problem, a service representative can perform various settings over the telephone line from the service station.

If you want to use this function, change the User Parameter. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 25, bit 4).

10

If an Error Occurs While Using Internet Fax

Error Mail Notification

The machine sends the Error Mail Notification to the sender when it is unable to successfully receive a particular e-mail message. A "cc" of this notification is also sent to the administrator's e-mail address when one is specified.

Limitation

□ If an incoming Internet Fax from another party bypasses the SMTP server, even if reception is not successful, an Error Mail Notification is not sent to the sender.

🖉 Note

- □ You can select to send Error Mail Notification with User Parameters. See p.167 "User Parameters" (switch 21, bit 7).
- □ If Error Mail Notification cannot be sent, the Error Report (E-Mail) is printed by the machine.
- □ If an error occurs when an e-mail is received via SMTP, the SMTP server sends an error e-mail to the originator of the document.

Error Report (E-Mail)

The Error Report (E-Mail) is printed by the machine when it is unable to send an Error Mail Notification.

Server-Generated Error E-mail

The transmitting server sends this error e-mail to the originator of e-mail that cannot be transmitted successfully (due to reasons such as specifying an incorrect e-mail address).

Limitation

□ If an Internet Fax transmission bypasses the SMTP server, even if transmission is not successful, an error e-mail is not sent from the server.

🖉 Note

□ After a server-generated error e-mail is printed, the first page of the sent document is printed.

11. Appendix

Connecting the Machine to a Telephone Line and Telephone

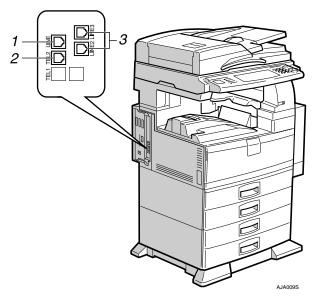
Connecting the Telephone Line

To connect the machine to a telephone line, use a snap-in modular type connector.

∰Important

□ Make sure the connector is the correct type before you start.

✤ Where to connect the machine



- 1. G3 interface unit connector
- 2. External telephone connector
- 3. Extra G3 interface unit connector

Selecting the Line Type

Select the line type to which the machine is connected. There are two types: tone and pulse dial.

🖉 Note

This function is not available in some areas.

Select the line type using "Administrator Tools". See p.194 "Selecting Dial/Push Phone".

205

Optional Equipment

Expansion Memory (32MB: DIMM)

This allows you to send fax documents at high resolution (Super Fine). This also allows you to receive fax documents at high resolution (Fine or Super Fine). If you require this option, consult your service representative. See p.214 "Maximum Values".

Extra G3 Interface Unit

This option provides one extra G3 line connection.

A maximum of two G3 interface units can be installed.

Specifications

Fax Transmission and Reception

Standard	G3		
Resolution	G3:		
	8×3.85 /mm·200 × 100 dpi (Standard character),		
	8×7.7 /mm·200 × 200 dpi (Detail character),		
	8×15.4 /mm (Fine character: optional expansion memory required),		
	16×15.4 / mm·400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character: optional expansion memory required)		
Transmission time	G3: 3 seconds at 28,800 bps, Standard resolution		
	(JBIG transmission: 2 seconds)		
Data compression method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG		
Maximum original size	Standard size: A3, 11" × 17"		
Maximum scanning size	Standard size: 297 × 432 mm/11" × 17"		
	Irregular size: $297 \times 1200 \text{ mm} / 11'' \times 47''$		
Print process	Printing on standard paper using a laser		
Transmission speed	G3:		
	33,600/31,200/28,800/26,400/24,000/21,600/ 19,200/16,800/14,400/12,000/9,600/7,200/4,800/ 2,400bps (auto shift down system)		

Power Consumption

Immediate Transmission	approx. 210 W
Memory Transmission	approx. 190 W
Memory Reception	approx. 190 W
Reception	approx. 650 W

✤ Internet Fax Transmission and Reception

Network	LAN : Local Area Network
	Ethernet/10Base-T, 100Base-TX, IEEE1394 (IP over 1394), IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)
Transmit function	E-mail
Scan line density	200×100 dpi (Standard character), 200×200 dpi (Detail character), 200×400 dpi (Fine character: optional) ^{*1} , 400×400 dpi (Super Fine character: optional) ^{*1}
Original size : Scanning width	A3 *1, B4 *1, A4
Communication Protocols	 Transmission SMTP, TCP/IP Reception POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion Attached file forms: TIFF-F (MH, MR ^{*1} , MMR ^{*1} compres- sion)
Authentication method	SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP
Internet communication	Send and receive e-mail with a computer that has an e-mail address
E-mail send functions	Automatic conversion of sent documents to e-mail format and e-mail transmission. Memory transmission only.
E-mail receive functions	Automatic detection and printing of appended TIFF-F (MH) files and ASCII text. Memory reception only.

^{*1} Full mode

✤ IP-Fax Transmission and Reception

Network	LAN: Local Area Network	
	Ethernet/10base-T, 100base-TX, IEEE1394 (IP over 1394), IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)	
Scan line density	8×3.85 mm·200 × 100 dpi (Standard character),	
	8×7.7 mm, 200 \times 200 dpi (Detail character),	
	8×15.4 mm (Fine character: optional expansion memory required),	
	16×15.4 mm, 400×400 dpi (Super Fine character: optional expansion memory required)	
Original size	Maximum A3 or 11" × 17" (DLT)	
Maximum scanning size	Standard: A3, 297 mm × 432 mm, Irregular: 297 mm × 1200 mm	
Transmission protocol	Recommended: T.38 Annex, TCP, UDP/IP communication, SIP (RFC 3261 compliant), H.323 v2	
Compatible machines	IP-Fax compatible machines	
IP-Fax transmission function	Specify an IP address and send faxes to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network.	
	Also capable of sending faxes from a G3 fax connected to a telephone line via a VoIP gateway.	
IP-Fax reception function	Receive faxes sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network.	
	Also capable of receiving faxes from a G3 fax connected to a telephone line via a VoIP gateway.	

Compatible Machines

Transmission Communication protocols • SMTP Reception POP3, SMTP, IMAP4 E-mail format Format MIME, Base64 Content-Type Image/tiff Multipart/mixed (text/plain, Image/tiff (attached file forms)) Data format • Profile TIFF Profile S Coding MH, MR^{*1}, MMR^{*1} Original size A3 *1, A4, B4 *1, 81/2"×11" *1, 81/2"×14" *1 Resolution (dpi) 200×100/200×200, 204×98/204×196, 200×400 or 400×400

This machine is compatible to machines having the following specifications.

^{*1} Available in full mode, depending on the other party's settings.

Acceptable Types of Originals

Make sure your originals are completely dry before setting them in the machine. Wet ink or correcting fluid from originals will mark the exposure glass and affect the resulting image.

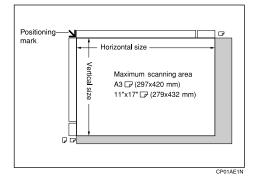
Acceptable original sizes

Where original is set	Acceptable original size	Maximum number of sheets	Paper thickness
Exposure glass	Up to A3 (297 × 420 mm), 11" × 17" (279 × 432 mm)	1	
ADF, one-sided docu- ment	Fax transmission: A5 \square to A3 \square (up to 1200 mm long) 8" × 5 ¹ / ₂ " \square to 11" × 17" \square	80 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb)	40-128 g/m ² (11-34 lb)
ADF, two-sided docu- ment	Fax transmission: A5 \square to A3 \square (up to 432 mm long) 8" × 5 ¹ / ₂ " \square to 11" × 17" \square	80 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb)	52-105 g/m ² (14-28 lb)

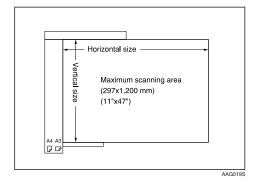
.

Paper size and scanned area

Exposure Glass



✤ ADF



Limitation

- □ There may be a difference in the size of the image when it is printed at the destination.
- □ If you place an original larger than A3, 11"×17" on the exposure glass, only an A3, 11"×17" area is scanned.

🖉 Note

- □ Even if an original is correctly placed on the exposure glass or in the ADF, a margin of 3 mm (0.1") around each edge of the original may not be sent.
- □ If the receiver uses paper of a smaller width than the original, the image is reduced to fit that paper. See p.75 "Auto Reduce".

□ The machine detects paper sizes in the following ways:

 When you place an original in the ADF, an original wider than about 264 mm (10.4") is scanned as A3, 11"×17" size. An original narrower than about 230 mm (9.1") is sent as $8^{1/2}$ ×11" or $8^{1}/_{2}$ "×14" size, and an original narrower than about 264 mm (10.4") is scanned as B4 JIS.

Originals up to 1200 mm (47.2") in length can be scanned.

• See the following table for sizes the machine can detect when you place an original on the exposure glass. Because the machine scans custom size documents in a standard size, part of the image may be truncated depending on the length of the document. For details about how to set custom size documents, see p.13 "Setting a Scan Area", Facsimile Reference < Basic Features>.

		Length ^{*1}			
		-249 mm	249 mm-274 mm 274 mm-316 mm 316 mm-		316 mm-
	-243 mm	×	B5 JIS □	A4D	F₽
Width	243 mm- 268 mm	B5 JIS 🖵	B4 JIS⊡	B4 JIS⊡	B4 JIS₽
	268 mm-	A4 🔽	A3D	A3D	A3D

Metric Version

Inch Version

		Length ^{*1}			
		-9.8"	9.8"-10.8"	10.8"-12.4"	12.4"-
_	-9.6"	×	×	8 ¹ /2"×11"□	FD
Width	9.6"-10.6"	$11"\times 8^1/_2"$	11"×17"⊡	11"×17"□	11"×17" D
1	10.6"-	11"×8 ¹ / ₂ "	11"×17"□	11"×17"□	11"×17"□

× - Unable to auto detect

Normally a length of about 420 mm (16.5") can be scanned; however, it is only possible to specify a scanning size up to 432 mm (17").

Maximum scan area

The following shows the maximum scan area:

- Memory Transmission: $297 \times 1200 \text{ mm}/11'' \times 47'' (W \times L)$ from the ADF
- Immediate Transmission: $297 \times 1200 \text{ mm}/11'' \times 47'' (W \times L)$ from the ADF

🖉 Note

During Immediate Transmission, the length of the scanning range can become narrower than 1200 mm (47"), depending on the character size as well as the settings on the destination machine.

. . .

. . .

• $297 \times 432 \text{ mm}/11'' \times 17'' (W \times L)$ (from the exposure glass)

Original Sizes Difficult to Detect

The machine has difficulty detecting the size of the following kinds of originals. (When this happens, the receiving machine may not select print paper of the correct size.)

- documents placed on the exposure glass of sizes other than those listed in the following table
- originals with index tabs, tags, or protruding parts
- transparent originals, such as OHP transparencies or translucent paper
- dark originals with dense text or drawings
- originals that contain areas of solid print
- originals that have solid print around their edges
- originals with glossy surfaces
- bound originals of more than 10 mm (0.3") in thickness, such as books.

The following paper sizes are automatically detected in facsimile mode.

Metric Version

Paper size where original is placed	A3D	8 ¹ / ₂ "×13" (F4)	B4 JIS 🖵	A4 🖓 🖙	B5 JIS 🖵 🖵	A5 🖓 🕞
Exposure glass	0	0	0	0	0	×
ADF	0	0	0	0	0	0

O- Auto detect

× - Unable to auto detect

Inch Version

Paper size where original is placed		8 ¹ / ₂ "×14" D	8 ¹ / ₂ "×11" D	5 ¹ / ₂ "×8 ¹ / ₂ "
Exposure glass	0	0	0	×
ADF	0	0	0	0

O- Auto detect

× - Unable to auto detect

Maximum Values

The following list contains the maximum value for each item.

🖉 Note

□ The maximum number of pages that can be stored or transmitted may decrease depending on the contents of documents.

Item	Standard	Expansion memory (Optional)
Memory (with optional)	4 MB	28 MB
Number of pages you can store in memory (Using A4 size Standard <itu-t#1chart>)</itu-t#1chart>	Approx. 320	Approx. 2,240
Total number of all documents	400	400
Number of pages per file	1,000	1,000
Number of pages for all files	1,000	3,000
Number of destinations you can specify for one file	500	500
Number of destinations you can specify for all files	500	500
Number of destinations you can program	2000	2000
Number of groups you can program	100	100
Number of destinations you can program in a group	500	500
Number of digits for fax numbers	128	128
Number of Programs you can register	100	100
Number of Auto Documents you can pro- gram	6	6
Number of Standard Message Stamps you can program	3	3
Number of transmission records the ma- chine can store	200	200
Number of stored documents you can specify at one time	1,000	1,000
Number of stored documents you can send at one time	30	30
Number of pages that you can store in the Document Server (Using ITU-T #4Chart)	Approx. 9,000	Approx. 9,000
Number of pages you can store in the Doc- ument Server for one document	1,000	1,000

INDEX

180-degree rotation printing, 991 Sided for 1st Page, 652 Sided from 1st Page, 652 Sided Original, 642 Sided Printing, 98, 147

A

Acceptable original sizes, 210 Acceptable types of originals, 210 Accessing user tools (Facsimile Features), 144 Adding a destination, 21 Address Book, 110, 118 Adjust Scan Density, 145 Adjust Sound Volume, 145 Administrator settings, 155 Administrator Tools, 157 Administrator Tools list, 155 All, 28 Applications stored on the CD-ROM, 109 Attaching a created cover sheet, 121 Authorized Reception, 173 Authorized RX, 147, 176, 179 Auto Detect, 179 Auto Document, 66, 158 Changing, 158 Deleting, 159 Sending, 66 Storing, 158 Auto Fax Reception Power-Up, 96 Auto Image Density, 145 Automatic Redial, 79 Auto Reduce, 75 Auto run program, 108

В

Basic transmission, 112 Batch Transmission, 79 Before use, 108 Book Fax, 62 Box Setting, 156, 181 Bypass Tray Paper Size, 179

С

Cancel, 26 Canceling a transmission, 19 Centre Mark, 97, 148 Chain Dial, 47 Change Initial Mode, 145 Change / Stop TX File, 18 Change TX Time, 22 Changing a program name, 131 Changing other options, 22 Changing stored document information, 136 Changing the line port, 60 Changing the SMTP server setting, 23 Changing the transmission time, 22 Changing the User Parameters, 171 Check / Change Settings, 18 Checkered Mark, 97, 148 Checking and canceling transmission files, 17 Checking the reception result (RX File Status), 32 Checking the transmission result (TX File Status), 31 Combine Two Originals, 84, 100 Communication Failure Report, 82 Communication information, 27 Confidential document, 36 Confidential File Report, 37 Confidential ID, 192 Confidential Transmission, 9 Confidential TX, 9 Configuring the H.323 gatekeeper, 151 Configuring the SIP server, 151 Confirming transmission results by e-mail, 6, 117 Connecting the machine to a telephone line and telephone, 205 Connecting the telephone line, 205 Counters, 155, 162 Creating a cover sheet, 120 Custom Size, 179

D

Default ID, 10 Default ID/Free Polling Reception, 14 Default ID / Free Polling RX, 15, 51 Default ID Transmission, 11, 12, 75 Default ID TX, 12 Delete, 35, 131, 153, 157, 160, 180, 184, 191 Delete File, 45, 139 Delete File after Printing, 35 Deleting *Information Box documents*, 45 *Programmed destinations*, 119 *Received and stored documents*, 35 Deleting a destination, 20 Deleting a gateway, 153

Deleting a program, 131 Deleting a stored document, 138 Deleting Information Box documents, 45 Delivering files received by fax, 127 Destination Adding, 21 Checking, 18 Deleting, 20 Dial Phone (10PPS), 195 Displaying confirmation of transmission, 18 Displaying the memory status, 33 Document Server, 133 Delete File, 138 Manage File, 136 Storing a document, 134 Do not Delete, 139, 160, 181 Dual Access, 79

Е

ECM (Error Correction Mode), 155, 166 Economy Time, 4, 22 Economy Transmission Time, 3 Editing Address Book, 118 Editing fax cover sheets, 120 E-mail Settings, 148 E-mail transfer, 95 E-mail TX Results, 117 Enable H.323, 150 Enable SIP, 150 End Receiver, 163 Error Mail Notification, 203 Error Report, 201 Error Report (E-Mail), 203 Expansion memory, 206 Extra G3 interface unit, 206

F

Facsimile Features, 141, 144, 157 Fax Header Print, 74 Fax via computer, 107 File Printing, 24 Printing a list of files in memory (Print TX File List), 26 Resending, 25 File Info. Setting, 134 File Name, 135 Folder Transfer Result Report, 198 Folder Transfer Result Report by e-mail, 199 Forwarding, 90, 147, 155, 162, 174, 176 Forwarding Mark, 165 Forwarding received documents, 90 Free Polling Transmission, 11, 12

Free Polling TX, 12 From First Page, 63 From Second Page, 63 Full Agreement, 176 Full/Partial agreement, 172 Function list, 141

G

General Settings/Adjustment, 145 Group Dial, 55

Н

H.323 Settings, 150 Handy dialing functions, 47

I

ID Override, 10 ID Override Polling Reception, 14 ID Override Transmission, 11, 12 If an error occurs while using Internet Fax, 203 If an Error Report is printed, 201 If memory runs out while storing an original, 78 If there is no paper of the correct size, 103 Image Rotation, 79, 100 Immediate Reception, 83 Information Boxes, 42, 187 Changing, 185 Deleting, 187 Printing, 191 Programming, 185 Storing documents, 42 Initial Set Up, 178 Installing individual applications, 109 Installing the software, 108 Internet Fax Settings, 148 IP-Fax Settings, 150

J

JBIG, 80, 96 *Reception*, 96 *Transmission*, 80 Journal, 27 Journal by e-mail, 81 Journal by e-mail, Transmitting, 81 Just size printing, 104

Κ

Keystroke Program, 129

L

Label Insertion, 74 LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor, 110 LAN-Fax Driver, 109 LAN-Fax operation messages, 122 LAN-Fax properties, setting, 110 LAN-Fax Result Report, 118 Line Priority Setting, 146 Line type *Changing*, 60 *Selecting*, 205

М

Making settings for option configuration, 111 Managing documents saved in the Document Server from a computer, 139 Manual Dial, 59 Manual Input, 21 Max. E-mail Size, 148 Maximum value, 214 Memory / Immed. Transmission Switch, 145 Memory Lock, 38, 165, 175, 178 Memory Lock ID, 194 Memory Lock RX, 165 Memory Reception, 84 Memory Status, 33 Memory Storage Report, 82 Menu protection settings, 198 More transmission functions, 78 Multi-copy, 84 Multi-copy Reception, 99 Multi-port, 60 Multistep transfer, 88

Ν

Names of major functions, 2 No, 35 Non-programmed Name, 69, 135 Number of Sets, 177

0

Off, 164 On Hook Dial, 57 On Hook Dial key, 57 On Hook Mode Release Time, 146 Operation switch, 96 Optional equipment, 206 Originals, 210 Original sizes difficult to detect, 213 Original Type Priority, 145 Origi. + Stored File, 70 Other transmission features, 47 Output Tray, 106

Ρ

Page Reduction, 102 Page Separation and Length Reduction, 101 Paper Tray, 147, 178 Parallel Memory Transmission, 78 Parameter Setting, 155 Partial Agreement, 176 Password, 135, 183 Pause/Redial key, 47 Personal Boxes, 40, 182, 184 Changing, 182 Deleting, 184 Printing, 191 Programming, 182 Polling ID, 193 Polling Reception, 14 Polling Reception Reserve Report, 16 Polling Reception Result Report, 16 Polling RX, 15, 51 Polling Transmission, 11 Polling Transmission Clear Report, 13 Polling TX, 12 Power Failure Report, 202 Print, 35 Print 1st Page, 72 Print 2 Sided, 178 Print 2 Sides, 72 Print Completion Beep, 97 Print Confidential RX File, 36 Print / Delete Stored RX File, 34, 35 Printed reports, 82 Print File, 24, 67, 72 Printing Box List, 191 Confidential document, 36 File received with Memory Lock, 38 Information Box documents, 44 Journal, 27 Options, 97 Personal Box documents, 41 Received and stored documents, 34 Special Sender List, 181 Printing a confidential document, 36 Printing a file, 24 Printing a file received with Memory Lock, 38 Printing a list of files in memory (Print TX File List), 26 Printing and saving, 118 Printing/deleting received and stored documents (Print/Delete Stored RX File), 34

Printing documents stored as Auto Documents, 67 Printing Information Box documents, 44 Printing options, 97 Printing Personal Box documents, 41 Printing stored documents, 70 Printing the Journal, 27 Print List, 26, 172, 181, 191 Print Memory Lock, 38 Print on 2 Sides, 35 Print per File No., 28 Print Personal Box File, 41 Print per User, 28 Print Reception Time, 148 Priority trays, 104 Priority TX, 8 Program / Change, 157, 158, 175 Program / Change / Delete Gateway, 150 Program / Change / Delete Scan Size, 160 Program / Change / Delete Standard Message, 157 Program Confidential ID, 193 Program Economy Time, 146 Program Fax Information, 145 Program key, 130 Program Memory Lock ID, 194 Programming/changing Special Senders, 175 Program Polling ID, 193 Programs, 129 Changing, 129 Deleting, 131 Registering, 129 Program Size 1, 160 Program Size 2, 160 Program Special Sender, 175 Push Button Phone, 195 PWD Code, 52

Q

Quick Dial, 55 Quick Operation Key, 146 Quitting default settings, 144

R

RDS (Remote Diagnostic System), 202 Receiver, 184 Receiving documents according to parameter-specified settings, 86 Receiving documents unconditionally, 85 Receiving Station, 52, 87 Receiving Statn, 54 Reception, 83 Reception features, 83 Reception File Print Quantity, 147 Reception functions, 87 Reception Reverse Printing, 147 Reception Settings, 147 Reception Time, 98 Reception features, 83 Reception File Setting, 196 Reception functions, 87 Reception Report e-mail, 196 Reception Result (RX File Status), 32 Reception Settings, 147 Redial, 47 Reduced Image Transmission, 75 Registering and changing Keystroke Programs, 129 Registering a priority function using a program, 130 Registering or changing a gateway, 152 Report, 82 *Communication Failure Report,* 82 Error Report, 201 Memory Storage Report, 82 Power Failure Report, 202 Requesting Party, 52, 87 Resending a file, 25 Reverse Order Printing, 84, 102 Routing e-mail received via SMTP, 94 Routing received documents with SUB Code, 91 RX File Print Qty, 147 RX File Status, 32 RX Reverse Printing, 147

S

Same as Basic Settings, 176 Scan End Reset, 145 Scan Size, 160 Changing, 160 Deleting, 161 Programming, 160 Search by File Name, 70, 72 Search by User Name, 69, 71 Selecting Dial/Push Phone, 194 Selecting the line type, 205 Select Line, 61 Select Title, 145 Sender Settings, 5 Sending a stored file, 68 Sending at a specific time (Send Later), 3 Sending fax documents from computers, 107 Sending stored documents, 68

Send Later, 3 SEP Code, 50 Server-generated error e-mail, 203 Setting a user for viewing received and stored documents, 197 Setting LAN-Fax Driver properties, 110 Setting print properties, 110 SID Code, 50 Simultaneous Broadcast, 80 SIP Settings, 150 SMTP, 23,94 SMTP reception, 93 SMTP reception using Internet Fax, 93 SMTP RX File Delivery Settings, 149 Solving operation problems, 201 Special RX Function, 179 Special Senders, 172 Special Senders to treat differently, 172 Specifications, 207 Specifying options, 115 Specify Tray for Lines, 148 Speed Dial, 55 Stamp, 73 Standard Messages, 157 Deleting, 157 Programming, 157 Standard Message Stamp, 65 Standard Size, 179 Std. Message, 65 Stop Scanning, 159 Stop Transmission, 19 Store, 159 Store / Change / Delete Auto Document, 158 Store / Delete / Print Information Box File, 43 Stored file + Origi., 70 Stored RX File User Setting, 197 Store File, 134 Store only, 134 Store & Transmit, 134 Storing a document, 134 Storing documents in Information Boxes, 42 Storing or printing received documents, 195 SUB Code, 49, 91 Substitute Reception, 85 Sub transmission mode, 62 Sub TX Mode, 62, 136 Switches and Bits, 167 Switch Reception Mode, 147

Т

Telephone line, 205 Text Size Priority, 145 Top to Bottom, 64 Top to Top, 64 Transfer Boxes, 188 Changing, 188 Deleting, 190 Printing, 191 Programming, 188 Transfer Report, 192 Transfer Req., 54 Transfer Request, 52 Transfer Result Report, 88 Transfer Result Report (transfer request by e-mail), 89 Transferring, 92 Transferring received documents, 92 Transfer Station, 52, 87 Transmission features, 47 Transmission mode, 3 Transmission options, 73 Transmission Page Count, 162 Transmission time Changing, 22 Transmission with Image Rotation, 79 Transmit Failed File, 25 Tray for Lines, 106 Tray Shift, 106 TSI Print, 103 Turning off the main power / in the event of power failure, 202 Two-Sided Printing, 98 Two-Sided Transmission, 63 TX File, 18 TX File Status, 31 TX Stamp Priority, 146

User Name, 135 User Parameter List, 167 User Parameters, 167 User Tools/Counter key, 144, 157 Using administrator settings, 157 Using a program, 132 Using a Web browser, 140 Using DeskTopBinder, 139 Using the Document Server, 133

V

Viewing fax information using a Web browser, 123

Web Image Monitor

Programming destination information, 125 Viewing, printing, and deleting received fax documents, 123 Where incoming documents are delivered - output tray, 106 With transfer requests set in the System Settings menu, 55

